

THE
M. E. C. A. S. GRAMMAR
OF
MODERN LITERARY ARABIC

COMPILED BY
THE MIDDLE EAST CENTRE FOR ARAB STUDIES
SHEMLAN, LEBANON

1965
KHAYATS
Beirut

*Copyright 1965. All rights reserved.
This book may not be reproduced
either in whole or in part
without the written permission
of the publisher.*

first edition 1965

*Published by KHAYATS
90-94 Rue Bliss, Beirut, Lebanon*

PREFACE

Several good grammars of modern Arabic are already on the market: without wishing to make invidious comparisons we might mention in particular David Cowan's "Modern Literary Arabic", and, for those who prefer the "direct" or inductive method of teaching, "An Introduction to Modern Arabic" by Farhat J. Ziadeh and R. Bayly Winder.

For various reasons, however, none of the existing grammars has proved suitable for use at the Middle East Centre for Arab Studies. As we explained in the preface to our Selected Word List of Modern Literary Arabic, we attach considerable importance to the principle that in learning a language as rich as Arabic vocabulary should be acquired in a regulated manner. This principle was followed in our reading book "The Way Prepared", and it has also been applied in teaching Arabic grammar at this Centre. In the present Grammar, which is the fourth recension of a text-book that has been used in the Centre for several years, the words used in the explanatory text and in the Exercises are closely related to the Selected Word List and The Way Prepared. For example, Chapters and Exercises numbers I to VI use only words from Section 1 of the Selected Word List, numbers VII to XIII use only words from Section 2, and so on. Only occasionally have we found it necessary to illustrate a point of grammar with a word not to be found in the appropriate Section of the Selected Word List. Where words not in the Selected Word List are used in an Exercise, they are listed at the head of the Exercise.

Naturally enough, no other grammar is so related to the Selected Word List and The Way Prepared.

Other factors have shaped this Grammar. The most important is that the students who attend this Centre are of widely varying

ages, nationalities, backgrounds and linguistic ability, the only common denominator being a knowledge of English - the language of instruction. This has had two results. First, we have avoided as far as possible the use of grammatical terms the meaning of which would have to be explained to most students before they could be understood, and in general we have tried to explain points of grammar in the way that will be least difficult for English-speaking students: the grammarian or the Arabist will thus miss many terms of art employed in other grammar books. Secondly, our experience leads us to believe that the majority of students learn Arabic grammar more quickly when taught by the traditional method - that is to say by the laying down of rules followed by practice with sentences exemplifying those rules - than by the inductive method, in which sentences are set out and then a grammatical analysis provided. Our Grammar therefore follows the traditional method.

Another important consideration is that this Centre exists to teach modern literary Arabic, that is to say the language of present-day newspapers, books, periodicals and wireless broadcasts. For this reason, although we have tried to indicate the best practice where more than one modern usage exists, we have not altogether ignored the less preferable. Purists may not approve of everything we say, but we have felt it necessary to inform our students of many usages that are now frequently met with in practice.

This is of course primarily designed as a teaching grammar, intended for the beginner who is undergoing a formal course of instruction with a teacher - indeed we do not believe that it is possible for any but the most gifted and dedicated student to teach himself Arabic. This means that, for example, little is to be found in the Grammar about pronunciation.

It means, also, that the general scope of the Grammar is the minimum necessary to enable the student to write modern Arabic without grammatical mistakes and to understand the grammar of what he reads in the newspapers, etc. However, this "minimum" has, we believe, been set out sufficiently fully for the book to be

useful as a work of reference to those who have learnt modern Arabic but need from time to time to check points of grammar.

For the student who wishes to deepen his grammatical knowledge, or to move from modern to classical Arabic, W. Wright's "Grammar of the Arabic Language" is indispensable.

We hope that the present Grammar will prove helpful to many who have begun the study of modern literary Arabic, and that teachers will find it, in conjunction with the Selected Word List and The Way Prepared, a useful aid to their teaching programmes.

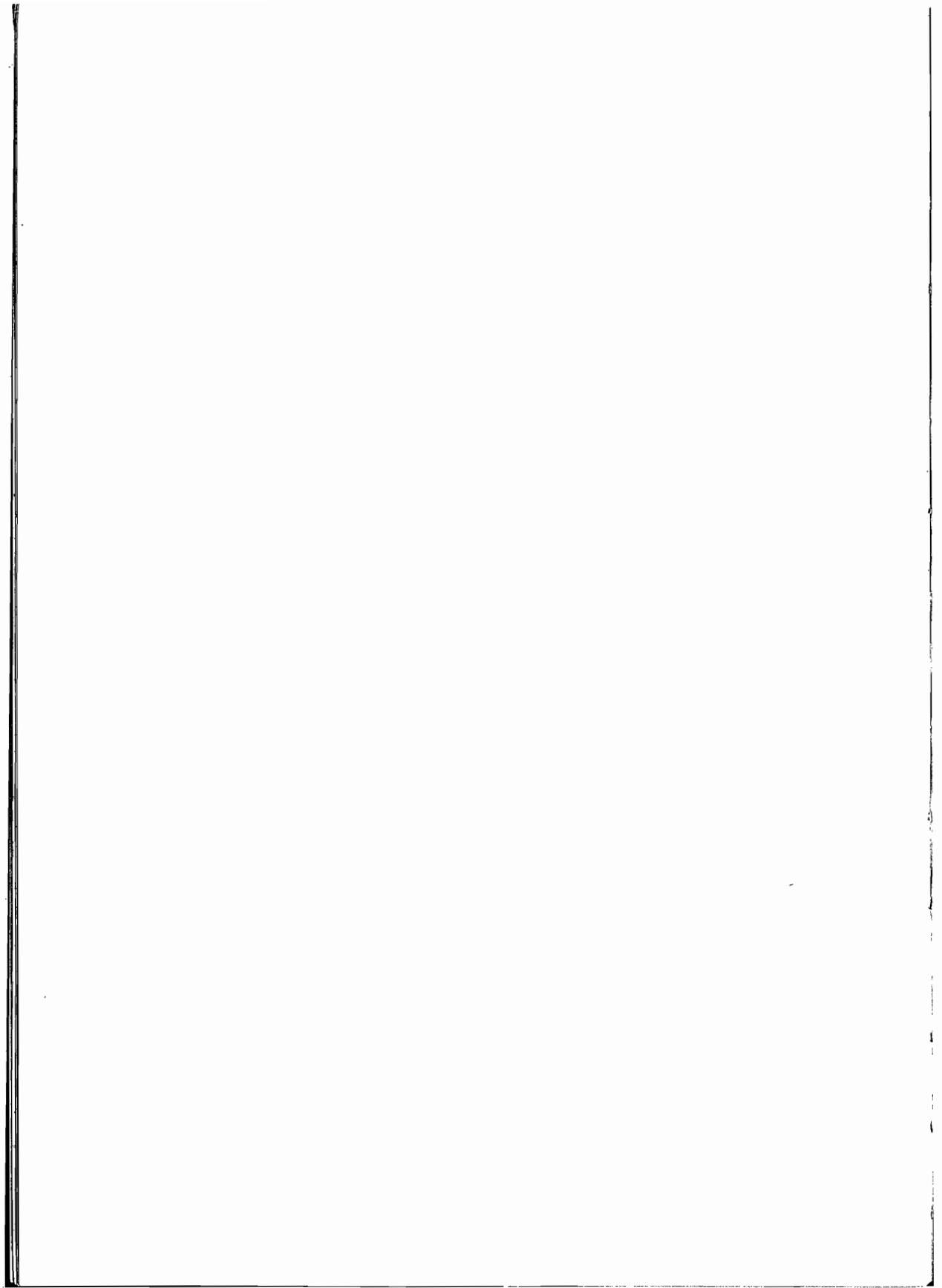
Middle East Centre for Arab Studies,
1965

CONTENTS

		<u>PAGE</u>
PREFACE		v
Introduction	The Alphabet; Orthographic Signs; Transliteration	xiii
Chapter I	The Definite Article; Gender; Case; Number; Sound Plurals; Adjectives	1
Chapter II	Tenses; The Perfect Active of the Simple Verb; The Negative of the Perfect; Concord of Verb and Subject; Word Order; The Conjunction "And"	6
Chapter III	Use of the Accusative and Genitive Cases	11
Chapter IV	Collectives; Plurals; قَاضٍ etc.; Relative Adjectives; Nouns of Time, Place and Instrument; Diminutives	15
Chapter V	Personal Pronouns; Pronominal Suffixes and Possessive Pronouns; Demonstrative Pronouns	21
Chapter VI	The nouns أَبٌ , أَخٌ , etc.	31
Chapter VII	The Interrogative; The Vocative; "All", "Some" and "Both"	35
Chapter VIII	Diptotes; The Comparative and Superlative of Adjectives	44

		<u>PAGE</u>
Chapter IX	Adverbs	53
Chapter X	The Imperfect Active of the Simple Verb; The Future; قَدْ ; The Negative of the Imperfect	56
Chapter XI	The Passive; The Participles; The Impersonal Use of the Passive	61
Chapter XII	The Verbal Noun; The Absolute Object; غَيْرَ ; عَدَمَ	67
Chapter XIII	The Perfect and Imperfect of the Verb كَانَ , "To be"; Tenses; "To have"	72
Chapter XIV	Conjugation of the Indicative; Subjunctive, Jussive and Imperative; The Emphatic	78
Chapter XV	Use of the Subjunctive and Jussive; The Jussive and Imperative of كَانَ	80
Chapter XVI	The Particles لَكِنَّ , أَنْ , إِنَّ , etc.; Sequence of Tenses; The لَا of Categorical Negation	87
Chapter XVII	Relative Sentences; The Relative Pronoun	96
Chapter XVIII	More Adverbs; The Hāl and Tamyīz	101
Chapter XIX	Improper Annexation; Attraction	106
Chapter XX	The Derived Forms of the Triliteral Verb	110

		<u>PAGE</u>
Chapter XXI	Derived Forms II, III, and IV	113
Chapter XXII	Derived Forms V, VI, and VII	120
Chapter XXIII	Derived Forms VIII, IX, and X	127
Chapter XXIV	Conditional Sentences	134
Chapter XXV	Exceptive Sentences	141
Chapter XXVI	Numbers	145
Chapter XXVII	Doubled Verbs	162
Chapter XXVIII	Conjugation of Hamzated Verbs	168
Chapter XXIX	Assimilated Verbs	180
Chapter XXX	Hollow Verbs	188
Chapter XXXI	Defective Verbs	200
Chapter XXXII	Doubly Weak Verbs	210
Chapter XXXIII	Quadriliteral Verbs	223
Chapter XXXIV	The Sisters of كَانَ ; Some Useful Verbs and Auxiliaries	228
Chapter XXXV	Exclamations; Wishes	239
Appendix A	The Feminine	243
Appendix B	Broken Plurals	245
Appendix C	Diptotes	247
Appendix D	Hamza	250
Appendix E	Rules for Changes in Hollow Verbs	254
Index		257



M.E.C.A.S. GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION

The Alphabet

Name of letter	Standing alone	Joined to		
		a preceding letter	a preceding and follow- ing letter	a follow- ing letter only
ألف 'alif	ا	ا		
باء ba'	ب	ب	بـ	بـ
تاء ta'	ت	ت	تـ	تـ
ثاء tha'	ث	ث	ثـ	ثـ
جيم jim	ج	ج	جـ	جـ
حاء Ha'	ح	ح	حـ	حـ
خاء xa'	خ	خ	خـ	خـ
دال dal	د	د		
ذال dhal	ذ	ذ		
راء ra'	ر	ر		
زاي zay	ز	ز		
سين sin	س	س	سـ	سـ
شين Shin	ش	ش	شـ	شـ

Name of letter	Standing alone	Joined to			
		a preceding letter	a preceding and follow- ing letter	a follow- ing letter only	
صَاد Sād	ص	ص	ص	ص	ص
ضَاد Dād	ض	ض	ض	ض	ض
طَاء Tā'	ط	ط	ط	ط	ط
ظَاء Dhā'	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ
عَيْن ʿayn	ع	ع	ع	ع	ع
غَيْن ghayn	غ	غ	غ	غ	غ
فَاء fā'	ف	ف	ف	ف	ف
قَاف qāf	ق	ق	ق	ق	ق
كَاف kāf	ك	ك	ك	ك	ك
لَام lām	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل
مِيم mīm	م	م	م	م	م
نُون nūn	ن	ن	ن	ن	ن
هَاء hā'	ه	ه	ه	ه	ه
وَاو wāw	و	و	و		
يَاء yā'	ي	ي	ي	ي	ي
هَمْزَة hamza		See note (g) below			

Notes :

- (a) Arabic script runs from right to left.
- (b) Of the letters listed, **و** and **ي** are said to be weak. Although they represent the consonants w and y, they are associated with the vowel sounds u and i and are frequently modified and sometimes even dropped in pronunciation and writing.
- (c) At the end of some words the letter **ا** is written **ى** and is known as alif maqṣūra.
- (d) The vowels, which are normally omitted in writing, are:—

(**َ**) (a) (fatha)

(**ِ**) (i) (kasra)

(**ُ**) (u) (damma)

When they are inserted they are written above or, in the case of the kasra, below the letter they follow.

- (e) To form long vowels, fatha, kasra and damma are followed by the letter associated with them, i.e.

ا **َ**

و **ُ**

ي **ِ**

- (f) The diphthongs au and ai are formed when damma or fatha are followed by a vowelless **و** or **ي**, i.e.

وْ au (see paragraph 2(d))

يْ ai (see paragraph 2(d)).

- (g) Hamza (ء) is of two kinds, the “cutting” and the “joining” hamza (hamzat-al-qat’ and hamzat-al-wasl). The first is pronounced as a glottal stop. The second, which is found only at the beginning of a word, is elided in pronunciation with the final vowel of the preceding word. Where there is no such vowel one has to be supplied.

In vowelised writing this elision is shown by the sign (-).

The hamzat-al-qat’ behaves in every respect as a consonant, with the additional characteristic that the letter on which it is written varies. Rules for writing hamza will be found in Appendix D, together with a list of those hamzas that are hamzat-al-wasl.

- (h) The letter ة , which is frequently found in feminine endings, is called tā marbūta. It consists of a hā’ with the two dots of a tā’ written over it. It is pronounced as tā’ except at a pause, when it is pronounced like hā’.
- (i) Where the letter ي occurs at the end of a word and is preceded by a syllable carrying a fatha and has no vowel of its own it is written without its two dots and pronounced “a” e.g. على (ala). Such a ي is known as alif maqsura bi surat al yā, or simply alif maqsura (i.e. “shortened alif” as it is pronounced short). If alif maqsura is preceded by the letter ي it is written as an ordinary alif, e.g.

أَلَدُنَا .

Orthographic Signs

2. (a) *Sukūn*. Consonants that have no vowel are marked with the sign ° (sukūn). Whenever a word ending in sukūn is followed by hamzat-al-wasl the sukūn has to be replaced by a vowel.

- (b) *Tanwīn*. The vowels may be written doubled as the case ending at the end of a word, and they are then pronounced as follows: َ (un), ً (an), and ِ (in). Frequently ً (an) is written with an added alif, e.g. مَلِكًا (malikan). The commonest exceptions to this are where ً is written over ة (tā marbūta) e.g. مَلِكَةً (malikatan); where it is written over hamza preceded by an alif, e.g. مَاءً (ma'an); and when followed by alif maqsura e.g. فَتًى (fatan).
- (c) *Shadda*. When there is no vowel to separate two identical consonants only one of these is written, with the sign ّ (shadda) placed above it. Sometimes two similar consonants are treated as identical and are combined under a shadda, e.g. مِمَّنْ (instead of مَنْ مَنْ). The process of putting a shadda on a letter is known as tashdīd (literally "strengthening"). When a weak letter (i.e. و or ي) is marked with a shadda, it ceases to be weak. When a letter marked with a shadda is vowelled with a kasra, the kasra is often written between the letter and the shadda. Fatha is always written over the shadda.
- (d) *Madda*. Where two alifs follow one another in the same word only one is written, with the sign ّ (madda) placed over it.
- (e) In certain words a long ā is represented by a downstroke over the letter it follows, e.g. هَذَا (hādhā).

Transliteration

3. (a) A system of transliteration that is adequate (if inelegant) for all normal purposes, and that has the advantage that it can be reproduced by an ordinary typewriter, may be devised by using, for the consonants, the first letter (or two letters where they are underlined) from the descriptions in the "Name of letter" column above, e.g. ت will be t, ث will be th, ذ will be dh, ظ will be Dh, and ع will be 9. Hamza will be ' (i.e. the first letter of 'alif). Ta marbuta may be rendered by h where it is not pronounced and by t where it is.
- (b) The short vowels may be rendered by a, i, and u, and the long vowels by writing a line over or under the short. The diphthongs will then be ay and aw.
- (c) In this Grammar, however, in which comparatively few transliterated words appear, we have not troubled to use a full system of transliteration, but have been satisfied with any transcription that appeared adequately to render the Arabic original without complicating the task of the printer or distracting the eye of the student.

CHAPTER I

The Definite Article; Gender; Case;
Number, Sound Plurals; Adjectives.

The Definite Article.

Most nouns in Arabic are indefinite in form and meaning and may be made definite by prefixing of the article **الْ**. Most classes of noun end in tanwin when they are indefinite, e. g. "a house", **بَيْتٌ**. When such a noun is defined it loses its tanwin, e. g. "the house", **الْبَيْتُ**.

2. The hamza of the definite article is hamzat-al-wasl. The **ل** of the article is assimilated when followed by any of the letters **ن** and **ل**, **ظ**, **ط**, **ض**, **ص**, **ش**, **س**, **ز**, **ر**, **ذ**, **د**, **ث**, **ت**, and these letters are the written with shadda, e.g.

The sugar

السُّكَّرُ

The table

الطَّاوِلَةُ

The meat

اللَّحْمُ

Note that three **ل** s cannot be written together in Arabic. Where a word that begins with **ل** is prefixed by the **ل** of the definite article and by the preposition **لِ** (meaning "to") the second **ل** is assimilated in accordance with the above rule and written with a shadda, e.g.

To the butcher

لِلْحَامِ

To a butcher

لِلْحَامِ

3. Nouns denoting abstract things or whole classes of things generally take the definite article in Arabic, e.g.

Science

الْعِلْمُ

Womankind

الْمَرْأَةُ

Dogs are animals

الْكِلَابُ حَيَوَانَاتٌ

Gender

4. Arabic has a masculine and a feminine gender. The commonest indication of a feminine noun or adjective is the ending ة ,

e.g. "king", مَلِكٌ ; "queen", مَلِكَةٌ ; "small (m.)", صَغِيرٌ

"small" (f.) صَغِيرَةٌ

(Note: a list of other feminine forms and categories is in Appendix A).

Cases.

5. Three cases exist : the nominative, accusative and genitive. They are distinguished by the final vowel, e.g.

	Indefinite		Definite	
nom .	يَتٌ	مَلِكَةٌ	الْيَتُ	الْمَلِكَةُ
acc.	يَتًا	مَلِكَةً	الْيَتَ	الْمَلِكَةَ
gen.	يَتٍ	مَلِكَةٍ	الْيَتِ	الْمَلِكَةِ

Number.

6. There are three numbers : singular, dual and plural.

7. The dual is formed by dropping the case ending of the singular

and adding the suffix ان (which becomes ين in the accusative and genitive), e.g.

nom.	Two kings	مَلِكَيْنِ	Two queens	مَلِكَتَيْنِ
acc. and gen.		مَلِكَيْنِ		مَلِكَتَيْنِ

Notes:

(a) If a singular ends in ى , the ى becomes ي in the dual

e.g. مَقْهَيَانِ (two coffee-houses), فَتَيَانِ (two young men),

مُسْتَشْفَيَانِ (two hospitals).

(b) If a singular ends in ا , the ا becomes و in the dual,

e.g. عَصَوَانِ (two sticks).

(c) If a feminine singular ends in ة (Appendix A) , the

hamza becomes و in the dual, e.g. صَحْرَاوَانِ (two deserts).

8. There are two types of plural: “sound” and “broken”. The latter , which are much the more common , are discussed in Chapter IV.

9. The masculine sound plural, which is hardly found except with some nouns and adjectives denoting male human beings, is formed by dropping the case endings of the singular and adding the suffix ون accusative and genitive ين , e.g.

A parent (father)	وَالِدٌ	Parents (fathers)	وَالِدُونَ
		acc. and gen.	وَالِدِينَ

10. The feminine sound plural, which is found with many nouns

including verbal nouns and passive participles), is formed by adding أَت (acc. and gen. أَت) to the singular after dropping the ta marbuta if there is one, e.g.

A mother	وَالِدَةٌ	Mothers (acc. and gen.)	وَالِدَاتُ
A drink or beverage	مَشْرُوبٌ	Drinks, beverages (acc. and gen.)	وَالِدَاتُ مَشْرُوبَاتُ مَشْرُوبَاتُ

Adjectives.

11. Adjectives normally follow their nouns and agree with them in gender, number, case and definition, except that when the nouns refer to things or animals in the plural the adjective is put in the feminine singular (for an exception to this rule see Chapter XVIII), e.g.

A small boy	وَلَدٌ صَغِيرٌ
The small island (accusative)	الْجَزِيرَةُ الصَّغِيرَةُ
The difficult years (accusative)	السَّنَوَاتُ الصَّعْبَةُ
Two good carpenters (nominative)	نَجَّارَانِ طَيِّبَانِ
Mixed company is masculine, e.g.	
The good boys and girls	الْأَوْلَادُ وَالْبَنَاتُ الطَّيِّبُونَ

12. However, a definite noun may be followed by an indefinite adjective (or noun), and the result is a complete sentence in Arabic. The verb "to be" is seldom used in the present tense and a sentence such as "the butcher is rich" is translated **الْحَمَّامُ غَنِيٌّ**.

Examples.

The mother is a teacher	الْأُمُّ مُعَلِّمَةٌ
The donkey is an animal	الْجِمَارُ حَيَوَانٌ

CHAPTER I

(Word List, Section 1)

EXERCISE 1 :

The Definite Article; Gender; Case;
Number; Sound Plurals, Adjectives.

وَزِيرٌ جَدِيدٌ — الْوَزِيرُ جَدِيدٌ — الطَّالِبُ الْفَقِيرُ — الْمَقَالَةُ
قَصِيرَةٌ — الْوَزِيرُ الْجَدِيدُ كَرِيمٌ — الْبَيْتُ الْجَمِيلُ كَبِيرٌ —
الْجِسْمُ قَوِيٌّ — الْيَدُ ضَعِيفَةٌ — الرَّجُلُ الْإِنْكِلِيزِيُّ طَوِيلٌ —
الْمُعَلِّمُونَ وَالْمُعَلِّمَاتُ غَائِبُونَ — لَحَامَانِ قَوِيَّانِ — قُوَاتٌ قَلِيلَةٌ —
الْحَيَوَانَاتُ الصَّغِيرَةُ — الْجَمَلُ حَيَوَانٌ — الْخُبْزُ كَثِيرٌ وَالشُّكْرُ
قَلِيلٌ — النَّجَارُونَ هُنَا قَلِيلُونَ — الْبُنْتَانِ صَغِيرَتَانِ وَالصَّبَّيَّانِ
كَبِيرَانِ — مَقَالَاتٌ سِيَاسِيَّةٌ قَصِيرَةٌ — يَدٌ طَوِيلَةٌ وَرَجُلٌ قَصِيرَةٌ —
الْمَلَأِسُ الْجَمِيلَةُ.

A poor baker. The short letter. The new house is small. Strong
governments. Societies are rich. The municipalities are weak.
The drinks are ready. The two boys are present and the two girls
are absent. Long sessions. The butcher is a strong man. The
mothers and fathers are present. A large hand. The lady teachers
are away today. Sheep are animals.

CHAPTER II

Tenses ; The Perfect Active of the Simple Verb ;
The Negative of the Perfect ; Concord of Verb
and Subject ; Word Order ; The Conjunction "And"

Tenses

Verbs in Arabic are conjugated in only two tenses: perfect and imperfect. Primarily these indicate complete and incomplete action respectively, and so the perfect can be rendered by the English past definite or perfect (i.e. "I took" or "I have taken").

The Perfect Tense

2. The 3rd person singular active of the perfect is taken as the basic form of the Arabic verb and dictionaries conventionally use this to identify the verb, e.g. the verb "to write" in Arabic dictionaries is represented by كَتَبَ, "he wrote".

3. The most frequent pattern of verb in Arabic consists of three letters or "radicals", and this simple form of the verb is often called the First Form. The root فَعَلَ is often used as a meaningless type root, ف, ع and ل representing respectively the first, second and third radicals. كَتَبَ is said to be of the pattern فَعَلَ, عَمِلَ of the pattern فَعِلَ, كَتَابُ of the pattern فَعَالُ, كَبِيرُ of the pattern فَعِيلُ, etc.

4. The middle vowel of the verb may be fatha, kasra or damma and must be learnt for each verb separately.

5. The numbers and persons of the perfect, here illustrated by the verb شَرِبَ, "to drink", are as follows :

3.m.s. شَرِبَ	He drank	2.m.s. شَرَبْتَ	You drank
3.m.du. شَرَبَا	They two drank	2.m.du. شَرَبْتُمَا	You two drank
3.m.pl. شَرَبُوا	They drank	× 2.m.pl. شَرَبْتُمْ	You drank
× 3.f.s. شَرَبَتْ	She drank	2.f.s. شَرَبْتَ	You drank
3.f.du. شَرَبْتَا	They two drank	2.f.du. شَرَبْتُمَا	You two drank
3.f.pl. شَرَبْنَ	They drank	2.f.pl. شَرَبْتُنَّ	You drank
1.m.s. and f.s. شَرَبْتُ		I drank	
1.m.pl. and f.pl. شَرَبْنَا		We drank	

Note: When the 3rd person feminine singular or 2nd person masculine plural are followed by hamzat-al-wasl their terminal sukun is replaced by kasra and damma respectively, e. g.

She drank the milk شَرَبَتْ الحليبَ

You drank the milk شَرَبْتُمُ الحليبَ

Negative of the perfect.

6. The particle مَا placed before the perfect makes it negative, e.g. "he did not go out", مَا خَرَجَ

Word Order.

7. The normal order of a verbal sentence is verb; subject; object: object or predicate. Even in unvowelled Arabic قَتَلَ الرَّجُلُ الْوَلَدَ could only mean "The man killed the child". However, when the subject is indefinite it often follows the predicate, e.g.

A man entered the house دَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ رَجُلٌ

Concord of Verb and Subject.

8. In an Arabic sentence containing a verb the verb is normally put first. In such sentences (called verbal sentences) the verb is singular when the subject is a noun, even a plural noun, e.g.

The children rode the horses رَكِبَ الْأَوْلَادُ الْحُصْنَ

They rode the horses رَكَبُوا الْحُصْنَ

9. If the subject is singular or dual, the verb follows the grammatical gender, e.g.

The girl went out and the two boys returned خَرَجَتِ الْبِنْتُ وَرَجَعَ الْوَلَدَانِ

The boy went out and the two girls returned خَرَجَ الْوَلَدُ وَرَجَعَتِ الْبِنَتَانِ

10. If the subject is plural and denotes things or animals, the verb is feminine singular, e.g.

The books arrived وَصَلَتِ الْكُتُبُ

The mares did not drink the water مَا شَرَبَتِ الْأَفْرَاسُ الْمَاءَ

The dogs ate the meat أَكَلَتِ الْكِلَابُ اللَّحْمَ

11. If the subject is plural and denotes persons, the verb follows the sex (mixed company being masculine) e.g.

The teachers came in and the (female) teachers went out دَخَلَ الْمُعَلِّمُونَ وَخَرَجَتِ الْمُعَلِّمَاتُ

The parents (both sexes) were present حَضَرَ الْوَالِدُونَ وَالْوَالِدَاتُ

Other concordances may be found but they are archaic.

12. If for any reason the subject precedes the verb, the verb agrees with the subject in number as well as gender, with the proviso that things or animals in the plural (not the dual) are grammatically feminine singular, e.g.

The teachers went in and the lady teachers came out
المُعَلِّمُونَ دَخَلُوا وَالْمُعَلِّمَاتُ خَرَجْنَ

The two dogs killed the sheep
الْكَلْبَانِ قَتَلَا الْخِرُوفَ

The two boys went and the two girls returned
الْوَلَدَانِ ذَهَبَا وَالْبِتْنَانِ رَجَعَتَا

The dogs and cows ate a great deal
الْكِلَابُ وَالْبَقَرَاتُ أَكَلَتْ شَيْئًا كَثِيرًا

13. In such sentences (called nominal sentences) the subject is usually a definite noun. With an indefinite subject it is normally better to use a verbal sentence (paragraph 7 above).

The Conjunction "And"

14. The word **وَ**, which is the commonest way of expressing "and" in Arabic, must be written as though it were a part of the word that follows it, e.g.

The boy and the girl
الْوَلَدُ وَالْبِنْتُ

15. The substitution of **وَ** for **فَ** either shews a closer connexion (sometimes causal) between what precedes and follows it than would be signified by **وَ**, or expresses an order of events, e.g.

He heard and (so) understood
سَمِعَ فَفَهِمَ
The boy entered and then the girl
دَخَلَ الصَّبِيُّ فَالْبِنْتُ

CHAPTER II

(Word List, Section 1)

EXERCISE 2:

Tenses; The Perfect Active of the Simple Verb;
The Negative of the Perfect; Concord of Verb and Subject:
The Conjunction "And"

جَلَسَ الْأَوْلَادُ — دَخَلَ الْغُرْفَةَ وَمَا دَخَلْتُ — شَرَبْتُ حَلِيبًا
وَمَا شَرَبْتُ مَاءً — خَدَمَ الْفَقِيرَانِ — عَقَدْنَا جَلَسَاتٍ طَوِيلَةً —
حَضَرْنَا أَجْتِمَاعَاتٍ قَصِيرَةً — قَتَلْتُمُ الْكِلَابَ — عَرَفَا
الْمَوْضُوعَ — ذَهَبَ الْأَبَاءُ وَالْأُمَّهَاتُ — الْعُمَّالُ ذَهَبُوا
وَالْأَغْنِيَاءُ جَلَسُوا — كَتَبْتُمَا الْمَكَاتِيبَ — حَضَرْتُمُ الْإِجْتِمَاعَ —
شَرَبُوا الْقَهْوَةَ — تَرَكَ الْمَكْتَبَةَ طَالِبٌ .

He ate the food. They mentioned the society. You (m.s.) left the house. They (m.du.) did not write the letter. You (m.pl.) killed the big donkey. We rode horses. They (f.pl.) did not go. You (m. and f.du.) drank tea. The boys and girls knew the teacher. I attended long sessions. The woman did not go out. The lady teacher has found the book. A dog drank the water. A politician published the long article. The teacher entered and the pupils stood up. You (f.s.) arrived yesterday.

CHAPTER III

Use of the Accusative and Genitive Cases

The Accusative

The accusative is used for the object of transitive verbs. Other uses will be dealt with in later chapters.

The Genitive

2. The genitive is used after all prepositions, e.g.

To the school	إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ
In the house	فِي الْبَيْتِ
From the office	مِنَ الْمَكْتَبِ

3. It is also used for the second of two nouns placed in what is called the "construct state", which expresses possession. In the construct state the first noun is defined by the fact of its being put in construct: it cannot therefore also be defined by the definite article (but see Chapter XIX), e.g.

The top of the mountain	رَأْسُ الْجَبَلِ
The door of the house	بَابُ الْبَيْتِ

4. The only words that may be placed between the governing noun and the following genitive in the construct state are the demonstratives هَذَا, هَذِهِ, etc. (Chapter V), e.g.

The top of this mountain رَأْسُ هَذَا الْجَبَلِ
 The door of this house بَابُ هَذَا الْبَيْتِ

5. Thus an adjective qualifying the governing noun must be placed after the governed, e.g.

The poor friend of the minister صَدِيقُ الْوَزِيرِ الْفَقِيرِ
 (This rule is sometimes broken in modern Arabic when the adjective in question goes very closely with its noun, as in مُدِيرٌ عَامٌّ, "Director-General", but the student should stick to the rule).

6. If there is more than one governing noun in a construct, it is preferable to put one only before the governed genitive and to add the other(s) with the appropriate pronominal suffix (Chapter V), e.g.

The roads, streets and markets
 of the city (lit. the roads of
 the city and its streets and its
 markets) طُرُقُ الْمَدِينَةِ وَشَوَارِعُهَا وَأَسْوَاقُهَا

7. It is sometimes not clear to which noun the adjective in a construct applies, e.g. ذَهَبَ إِلَى صَدِيقِ الْوَزِيرِ الْفَقِيرِ might mean either "he went to the minister's poor friend" or "he went to the poor minister's friend". This ambiguity can be avoided by breaking the construct and using the preposition لـ e.g.

ذَهَبَ إِلَى الصَّدِيقِ الْفَقِيرِ لِلْوَزِيرِ

can only mean "he went to the minister's poor friend"; or by such a circumlocution as ذَهَبَ إِلَى الصَّدِيقِ الْفَقِيرِ مِنْ أَصْدِقَاءِ الْوَزِيرِ i.e. he went to the poor friend from (among) the minister's friends.

8. Where the governing noun is in the dual or sound masculine

plural it loses its final ن before the following genitive, e.g.

The butcher's two sheep	خَرُوفَا اللَّحَّامِ
For the boys' fathers	لِوَالِدَيِ الْأَوْلَادِ

9. As the governing noun is defined by its inclusion in the construct, the phrase كِتَابُ الْمَعْلَمِ means "the teacher's book". In order to render the phrase "a book of the teacher's" it is necessary to use the construction "A book of the books of the teacher" - كِتَابٌ مِنْ كُتُبِ الْمَعْلَمِ

10. The genitive may also be used for the material of which something is made ; the whole of which something is a part ; or the purpose for which something is used, e.g.

A piece of cloth	قِطْعَةُ قُمَاشٍ
The iron gate	بَابُ الْحَدِيدِ
A cup of tea or a tea cup	فُنْجَانُ شَايٍ

Note that in this usage the first noun is not made definite by being put before the second (c.f. paragraph 3 above) : whether or not its meaning is definite depends on whether or not the second is defined. These are in effect compound nouns.

EXERCISE 3 :

Use of the Accusative and Genitive Cases

خَرَجْنَا مِنَ الْبَيْتِ وَذَهَبْنَا إِلَى الْحَدِيقَةِ — عَقَدَ رَئِيسُ الْوِزَارَةِ
 جَلْسَةً طَوِيلَةً جَدًّا مَعَ الْوُزَرَاءِ — أَخَذْتُ كِتَابًا مِنَ
 الْكُتُبِ وَجَلَسْتُ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ — خَدَمَ فِي السَّنَةِ الْأَخِيرَةِ
 فِي مَطْعَمِ الْقَرْيَةِ — عَرَفْنَا بُيُوتَ الْوُزَرَاءِ الْجُدُدِ —
 قَتَلَ الْحِصَانُ كَلْبَ الْبَيْتِ — نَشَرَتِ الْحُكُومَةُ
 مَقَالَاتِ رَئِيسِ الدَّوْلَةِ فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ — رَكِبْتُ الْبَارِحَةَ
 حِصَانًا مِنْ حِصَانِي الْمَلِكِ — لَحَامُوا الْمَدِينَةَ عِنْدَ رَئِيسِ
 الْبَلَدِيَّةِ — الشَّجَرَةُ فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ الْجَمِيلَةِ لِذَاكَ الْوَزِيرِ — الْكَلْبُ
 الصَّغِيرُ لِابْنِ السَّفِيرِ — ذَهَبَتْ أُمّهَاتُ الطُّلَابِ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ
 وَشَرَبْنَ شَايَاً مَعَ الْمُعَلِّمِينَ — بَحَثَ أَبْنَاءُ الْمَلِكِ عَنْ خَادِمَتِي
 الْمَلِكَةِ — بَحَثَ وُزَرَاءُ الْحُكُومَةِ فِي وَضْعِ الدَّوْلَةِ الدَّاخِلِيَّةِ.

The professor wrote a very long letter. I asked the ambassador's servant for the old books. You (f.s.) took one of the newspapers from the president's office. They went to a distant village. We searched for the baker's son. The carpenters of the village are few. The gardens of the minister's big houses are very beautiful. She took the books from the Mayor's (the head of the municipality's) son. The road from here to the sea is very short. The senator's parents owned the town's large coffee houses. The restaurant is near the main street of the village. The Ambassador held the council's annual session in the Embassy library.

CHAPTER IV

Collectives; Plurals; قاضٍ etc.;
Relative Adjectives; Nouns of Time,
Place and Instrument; Diminutives

Collectives

There are many words in Arabic that are collective in meaning, e.g. "trees", شَجَرٌ; "apples", تَفَاحٌ. The singular of most of these collectives is formed by adding ة, e.g. "a tree", شَجَرَةٌ; and from this a plural can also be formed (sometimes sound, sometimes broken) which is used when referring to a definite number rather than to the object in general. Some collectives have both a sound and a broken plural, e.g. trees, شَجَرٌ which has شَجَرَاتٌ which is used when referring to a definite number of trees and أَشْجَارٌ which is used to denote trees of several sorts as opposed to trees in general. In some cases, such as "horses", خَيْلٌ, "flocks", غَنَمٌ, and "camels", إِبِلٌ, no singular is found.

2. Collectives are masculine where the object is inanimate, feminine where it is animate but has no singular, and common where it is animate and has a singular form, e.g.

Sweet apples	تَفَاحٌ حُلُوٌّ
Many horses	خَيْلٌ كَثِيرَةٌ
Many bees	نَحْلٌ كَثِيرٌ أَوْ كَثِيرٌ

Plurals

3. Most nouns and many adjectives have broken plurals. These plurals are formed on various patterns, which are given in Appendix B. The broken plurals of adjectives may be used with nouns denoting male and female human beings. Examples are :

River	نَهْرٌ	plural	أَنْهَارٌ	or	أَنْهَرٌ
Month	شَهْرٌ	plural	شُهُورٌ	or	أَشْهُرٌ
Town	بَلَدٌ	plural	بِلَادٌ		
City	مَدِينَةٌ	plural	مُدُنٌ		

4. It is necessary to learn the appropriate plural(s) of each word individually.

5. Broken plurals referring to other than human beings are grammatically feminine singular. However, even the broken plurals of nouns denoting human beings are sometimes found qualified by feminine singular adjectives (c.f. Chapter I, paragraph 11), e.g.

The light infantry الْمَشَاةُ الْخَفِيفَةُ

where الْمَشَاةُ is thought of as a collective.

قَاضٍ etc.

6. Definite nouns and adjectives that end in ي preceded by kasra (e.g. "the judge", الْقَاضِي) replace the ي in the nominative and genitive singular of the indefinite by tanwin of kasra, e.g.

A judge (nom. and gen.)

قَاضٍ

The accusative is formed regularly, e.g.

قَاضِيًا

The *ي* is retained when the noun is definite, but there is no terminal vowel to indicate the nominative or genitive cases, e.g.

The judge (nom. and gen!)	القَاضِي
(acc.)	القَاضِيَّ
The judge of the city	قَاضِي الْمَدِينَةِ

7. Many broken plurals are of similar pattern, e.g.

Lands	أَرَاضٍ
Coffee-houses	مَقَاهٍ
Nights	لَيَالٍ

except that in the indefinite accusative they take the form أَرَاضِيَّ , مَقَاهِيَّ , etc.

8. Most nouns of the pattern قَاضٍ are active participles (see Ch. XI) and so may be used as nouns or as adjectives. They may have a feminine form (e.g. قَاضِيَّةٌ) and may be given the sound masculine and feminine plurals. When used as nouns they have broken plurals, e.g.

The judges	القُضَاةُ
------------	-----------

Relative Adjectives

9. An adjective may be formed from a noun by the addition of *ي* to its singular, e.g. خَشَبٌ , “wood”; خَشَبِيٌّ , “wooden”. If the noun ends with *ة* this is dropped, e.g. طَبِيعَةٌ , “nature”; طَبِيعِيٌّ , “natural”.

Note that the **ي** of the relative adjective takes the normal three case endings because the *tashdid* makes it behave like an ordinary strong letter (Introduction, paragraph 2 «b»).

10. The feminine form of the relative adjective is often used as an abstract noun, e.g. **اِسْتِرَاكِئِيَّةٌ** , “socialist”; **اِسْتِرَاكِئِيَّةٌ** , “socialism”.

Nouns of Time and Place

11. The prefix **مَ** is used to form nouns denoting the place or time at which an action occurs. The patterns **مَفْعَلٌ** , **مَفْعِلٌ** and **مَفْعَلَةٌ** occur, e.g.

Entrance	مَدْخَلٌ
Factory	مَعْمَلٌ
Appointment, appointed time or place, rendezvous	مَوْعِدٌ
Time or place of rising (of stars, etc.)	مَطْلَعٌ
School	مَدْرَسَةٌ

Nouns of Instrument

12. The prefix **مِ** is used to form nouns of instrument. The patterns **مِفْعَلٌ** , **مِفْعَلَةٌ** , or **مِفْعَالٌ** occur. The dictionary will tell you which is used for a given root, e.g. **مِكَنَسَةٌ** , “broom”; **مِفْتَاحٌ** , “key”; **مِبرَدٌ** , “file”.

Diminutives

13. Diminutives are formed by changing the vowelling of the first syllable of a noun to (ُ) and of the second to the diphthong َيَ , e.g. جَبِيلٌ , “a little mountain”; وَلَدٌ , “a little child”.

14. Where the second syllable contains a long vowel this changes to َيَ , e.g.

Small	صَغِيرٌ
Very small	صَغِيرٌ
A book	كِتَابٌ
A little book	كُتَيْبٌ

15. In nouns with four letters the vowel on the third radical is changed to (ِ) , e.g. عُقْرَبٌ , “little scorpion”, from عَقْرَبٌ , “a scorpion”, or to َيَ if the vowel it replaces is long, e.g. “a garden”, بُسْتَانٌ , “a small garden”, بُسَيْتَيْنِ .

CHAPTER IV

(Word List, Section 1)

EXERCISE 4:

Collectives; Plurals; قاضٍ etc.;
Relative Adjectives; Nouns of Time,
Place and Instrument; Diminutives

الْخَيْلُ الْقَوِيَّةُ عِنْدَ الْبَابِ — ذَهَبَ الْوَلَدُ مَعَ الْبَقَرَةِ إِلَى الْقَرْيَةِ
— التَّفَاحُ الْكَبِيرُ عَلَى مَائِدَةِ الْقَاضِي — طَلَبَ الْقَاضِي فُجَّانَ
شَايٍ — وَجَدَ السَّفِيرُ الْقَاضِيَّ فِي الْمَجْلِسِ — تَرَكْتُ مَقَاهِي
الْمَدِينَةَ وَذَهَبْتُ إِلَى الْجِبَالِ — كَتَبَ الْأُسْتَاذُ مَقَالََةً فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ
الْيَوْمِيَّةِ الْإِشْتِرَاكِيَّةِ — بَحَثْنَا فِي مَوْضُوعِ اجْتِمَاعِيٍّ —
قَدِمْتُ مِنَ الْمَمْلَكَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ مُنْذُ شَهْرَيْنِ — كَانَتْ النُّشْرَاتُ
الْاجْتِمَاعِيَّةُ عَلَى مَائِدَةِ مَكْتَبِ الرَّئِيسِ — الْوَطَنِيَّةُ فِي الْبِلَادِ
الْعَرَبِيَّةِ قَوِيَّةٌ — مَخْرَجُ النَّهْرِ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ مَدْخَلِ السُّوقِ — جِبَالُ
بِلَادِ لُبْنَانَ جَمِيلَةٌ — السَّمَكُ الصَّغِيرُ فِي النَّهْرِ وَالْأَسْمَاكُ
الْكَبِيرَةُ فِي الْبَحْرِ — لُبْنَانُ دُوَيْلَةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ جَدًّا — الْكَلْبُ عِنْدَ
مَدْخَلِ الدَّارِ الرَّئِيسِيِّ .

The olive tree is short and the palm tree is very high. I ate a big fish. The government of the kingdom is in the hands of the king. The judge of the city is absent. The minister owned many cafés and much land. The professor held the annual session of the council in the society's office. We left the mountain village at the end of last month. The library of the city is near the gardens. The workers' demands are many. The entrance to the Prime Minister's office is beautiful. A man sat on a chair in the restaurant and asked for a cup of tea. The clerk of the society went out through the main exit. A servant killed the little dog.

CHAPTER V

Personal Pronouns; Pronominal Suffixes and Possessive Pronouns; Demonstrative Pronouns

Personal Pronouns

1. The personal pronouns in the nominative case are:

He	هُوَ	You (m. s.)	أَنْتَ
They (m. du.)	هُمَا	You (m. du.)	أَنْتُمَا
They (m. pl.)	هُمْ	You (m. pl.)	أَنْتُمْ
She	هِيَ	You (f. s.)	أَنْتِ
They (f. du.)	هُمَا	You (f. du.)	أَنْتُمَا
They (f. pl.)	هُنَّ	You (f. pl.)	أَنْتُنَّ
I	أَنَا	We	نَحْنُ

2. In the accusative and genitive cases they are suffixes added to words as follows:

3. m. s.	هُ	2. m. s.	كَ
3. m. du.	هُمَا	2. m. du.	كُمَا
3. m. pl.	هُمْ	2. m. pl.	كُم
3. f. s.	هَا	2. f. s.	كِ
3. f. du.	هُمَا	2. f. du.	كُمَا

3. f. pl.	هِنَّ	2. f. pl.	كُنَّ
1. s.	يَ	1. pl.	نَا

Suffixed to nouns they are considered to be in the genitive case (i.e. in construct) and are equivalent to the possessive pronouns in English, e.g.

His office مَكْتَبُهُ

Suffixed to verbs they are considered as direct objects in the accusative case, e.g.

He took it أَخَذَهُ

They may also be suffixed to prepositions, e.g.

From them مِنْهُمْ

Notes:

(a) With verbs and the prepositions عَنْ and مِنْ the first person singular suffix يَ becomes نِي , e.g. تَرَكَنِي , مَنِي .

(b) The suffixes هُ , هُمَا , هُمْ and هُنَّ become هِ , هِمَا , هِم and هِن when preceded by ي or a kasra, e.g. كِتَابِي , كِتَابِيهِمْ .

(c) هُمْ and كُمْ become هُم and كُم when followed by hamzat-al-wasl, and هِم should become هِم . There is tendency, presumably on grounds of euphony, to make the vowel of elision a kasra with هِم but the damma is the vowel used in the Qur'an.

(d) When a suffix is added to the second person masculine

plural of the perfect tense, the ending ^{تُمْ} becomes ^{تُمْو}, e.g.

You taught us ^{عَلَّمْتُمُونَا}

(e) When a suffix is added to the third person masculine plural of the perfect tense the final alif is dropped, e.g.

They drank it ^{شَرِبُوهُ}

(f) When a suffix is added to the dual or the sound masculine plural of a noun the final ن is dropped (c.f. Chapter III, paragraph 9), e.g.

Their teachers ^{مُعَلِّمُوهُمْ}

Our two teachers (acc. and gen.) ^{مُعَلِّمَيْنَا}

(g) The letter ي is the “strongest” of the weak letters (c.f. Appendix D, paragraph 4 «c»), and when it is used as the first person singular suffix it dominates the preceding vowel, which becomes a kasra no matter what the case, e.g.

My boy	nom.	} وَلَدِي
	acc.	
	gen.	

With me ^{مَعِيَ}

(h) The suffix ي becomes ِي when preceded by ا or ي, and in the latter case the two letters are assimilated under a shadda, e.g.

My two hands (nom.) ^{يَدَايَ}

My two hands (acc. and gen.) ^{يَدَيَّ}

(i) Where the first person singular suffix **يَ** is added to a sound masculine plural from which the **ن** has been dropped in accordance with note (f) above, the preceding **و** in the nominative is replaced by a **ي** , e.g.

My teachers (nom.) **مُعَلِّمِي** does not differ from.
 My teachers (acc. and gen.) **مُعَلِّمِي**

(j) Whenever a suffix is added to a word ending in **ي** (alif maqsura) this alif is written as a long alif, e.g.

The young man **الْفَتَى**
 but Her young man **فَتَاهَا**
 He protected him **حَمَاهُ** (from **حَمَى** , to protect)

(k) Whenever a suffix is added to a preposition ending in alif maqsura, this alif maqsura changes into the diphthong **يَ** e. g.

to	إِلَى	on	عَلَى
to me	إِلَيَّ	on it	عَلَيْهِ

(l) The preposition **لِ** becomes **لِي** with all suffixed pronouns except the first person singular, e.g.

لَنَا ، لِي ، لَهُ ، لَكَ etc.

3. Pronouns are often used for emphasis, and to avoid ambiguity in sentences that have no verb, e.g.

She loves me (not anybody else) **تُحِبُّنِي أَنَا**

The minister is the spokesman **الْوَزِيرُ هُوَ الْمُتَحَدِّثُ**

4. **بَيْنَ** , “between”, must be used twice if either part of the phrase is a pronoun, e.g.

Between the minister and the employee **بَيْنَ الْوَزِيرِ وَالْمَوْظِفِ**

Between the minister and us **بَيْنَ الْوَزِيرِ وَبَيْنَنَا**

Between you and me **بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَكَ**

5. **إِيَّا** with an attached pronominal suffix forms an independent accusative pronoun:

3. m. s.	إِيَّاهُ	2. m. s.	إِيَّاكَ
3. m. du.	إِيَّاهُمَا	2. m. du.	إِيَّاكُمَا
3. m. pl.	إِيَّاهُمْ	2. m. pl.	إِيَّاكُمْ
3. f. s.	إِيَّاهَا	2. f. s.	إِيَّاكِ
3. f. du.	إِيَّاهُمَا	2. f. du.	إِيَّاكُمَا
3. f. pl.	إِيَّاهُنَّ	2. f. pl.	إِيَّاكنَّ
1. s.	أَيَّايَ	1. pl.	إِيَّانَا

These forms are employed:

- (a) When two pronominal suffixes are needed with the same verb, e.g.

He taught her it **عَلَّمَهَا إِيَّاهُ**

He killed him and her **قَتَلَهُ وَإِيَّاهَا**

- (b) as the object of a verbal noun, e.g.

Because of his killing her بِسَبَبِ قَتْلِهَا

(c) when a transitive verb requires a direct and indirect object both of which are pronouns. In such a case either of the following is possible:

He prepared it for me حَضَّرَهُ لِي or حَضَّرَ لِي إِيَّاهُ

Note that إِيَّاهُ replaces the direct object. It cannot be used to replace the indirect object (لِي in the above sentence).

(d) for emphasis with verbs that take a direct object, e.g.

I served him إِيَّاهُ خَدَمْتُ

The Demonstrative Pronouns

6. The demonstrative pronouns are:

Singular : "This", all cases, masc. هَذَا

» » » , fem. هَذِهِ

Dual : "These two", nom. masc. هَذَانِ

» » acc. and gen. masc. هَذَيْنِ

» » nom. fem. هَاتَانِ

» » acc. and gen. fem. هَاتَيْنِ

Plural : "These", all cases, masc. and fem. هَؤُلَاءِ

Singular : "That", all cases, masc. ذَلِكَ

» » » fem. تِلْكَ

Dual	:	"Those two", nom. masc.	ذَانِكَ
	»	» acc. and gen. masc.	ذَيْنِكَ
	»	» nom. fem.	تَانِكَ
	»	» acc. and gen. fem.	تَيْنِكَ
Plural	:	"Those", all cases, masc. and fem.	أُولَئِكَ

Notes:

(a) With nouns denoting things and animals in the plural the feminine singular forms *هَذِهِ*, *تِلْكَ*, are used (c. f. Chapter I, paragraph 11).

(b) Where the demonstrative is used to define a noun the noun follows it and is definite, e.g. "this man", *هَذَا الرَّجُلُ*. If in this sentence the noun had not been defined the meaning would have been "this is a man", *هَذَا رَجُلٌ*. In order to produce the meaning "this is the man" a personal pronoun agreeing with the subject in number and gender is inserted between the demonstrative and the noun and the latter is made definite (see paragraph 3 above), e.g.

These are the teachers *هَؤُلَاءِ هُمُ الْمُعَلِّمُونَ*

Those are the two girls *تَانِكَ هُمَا الْبَنَتَانِ*

(c) In order to describe a noun that is in construct, the demonstrative is put after the whole phrase, e.g.

"this minister of the government", *وَزِيرُ الْحُكُومَةِ هَذَا*
هَذَا وَزِيرُ الْحُكُومَةِ means "this is the minister of the government";

"this teacher of the girl", *مُعَلِّمَةُ الْبِنْتِ هَذِهِ*

(مُعَلِّمَةُ هَذِهِ الْبِنْتِ means “the teacher of this girl”;)

كِتَابُكَ هَذَا, “this book of yours”,

(هَذَا كِتَابُكَ means “this is your book”)

Sometimes the pronoun is inserted for emphasis in sentences of the latter pattern, e.g. “this is your book”, هَذَا هُوَ كِتَابُكَ.

EXERCISE 5 :

Personal Pronouns; Pronominal Suffixes and
Possessive Pronouns; Demonstrative Pronouns

نَحْنُ الْآنَ فِي غُرْفَةِ الطَّعَامِ - أَنْتُمْ حَاضِرُونَ وَهُمْ غَائِبُونَ -
هُمَا وَلَدَانِ وَأَنْتُمَا بَنَتَانِ - عَقَدَ الْمَجْلِسُ جَلْسَتَهُ الْأُولَى فِي
مَكْتَبِ الْوَزِيرِ - ذَهَبْتُ مِنْ يَتِّكُنَ الْقَدِيمِ إِلَى يَتِّتْنَا - بَحَثَ
الرَّئِيسُ فِي مَطَالِبِهِمْ - مَقْهَاهُ كَبِيرٌ وَمَقْهَائِي صَغِيرٌ - أَخَذُوكَ
مَعَهُمْ إِلَى السَّفَارَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ - مُعَلِّمُوكَ وَمُعَلِّمِي حَاضِرُونَ -
أُخْتِي الْآنَ عِنْدَنَا وَأَخَوَاتُكَ فِي يَتِّتِكَ - حَضَرَ صَدِيقِي وَأَخَذَ
الْمَكْتُوبَ مِنِّي - أَصْدِقَاءُ الرَّئِيسِ غَائِبُونَ وَأَقْرِبَاءُ الْوَزِيرِ
حَاضِرُونَ - جَمَعُوا الْكُتُبَ وَاسْتَعْمَلُوهَا فِي مَدَارِسِهِمْ - عَلَّمَتْنَا
مُعَلِّمَاتُنَا إِيَّاهُ - هَذَا الرَّجُلُ أَكَلَ فِي مَطْعِمِكُمْ - هَذِهِ مَكْتَبَةُ
كَبِيرَةٍ وَتِلْكَ مَكْتَبَةُ صَغِيرَةٍ - هَذَانِ الرَّجُلَانِ وَتَانِكَ الْمَرْأَتَانِ
لَبِسُوا ثِيَابَهُنَّ الْجَدِيدَةَ - أُولَئِكَ هُنَّ أَخَوَاتِي - فَوَاكِهُ الْحَدِيقَةِ
هَذِهِ جَيِّدَةٌ - هَؤُلَاءِ النِّسَاءُ فَقِيرَاتٌ - أَرَاظِينَا هَذِهِ جَبَلِيَّةٌ -
هَؤُلَاءِ هُمْ الْوُزَرَاءُ .

I am present and my sister is absent. You (f. s.) are a teacher in
our village. They are ambassadors in your kingdom. The little girl
knew the cow by its eyes. Your (f. pl.) old books are in this library.

They (m. pl.) looked for you today and did not find you (m. pl.).
I asked those two boys for the book. These letters of yours (m. s.)
arrived two days ago. The coffee-houses are near the sea. Those
demands of yours (m. pl.) are always in the daily newspapers.
Those men are rich and those women are poor. You (f. pl.) put the
table in his room. My teachers (m. pl.) left us in the street and
went home (to the house). These are difficult times. She collected
these things from her old house. They (m. pl.) mentioned it at
their meeting. The girl went with the student's mother. They held
a meeting with the minister and his friends in their coffee-house.
My teacher taught me it.

CHAPTER VI

The Nouns أَبٌ , أَخٌ etc.

In the nouns:

	Singular	Dual	Plural
Father	أَبٌ	أَبَوَانِ	آبَاءُ
Brother	أَخٌ	أَخَوَانِ	إِخْوَةٌ and إِخْوَانُ
Father-in-law	حَمٌ	حَمَوَانِ	أَحْمَاءُ

the letters, ا , و , ي replace the ordinary case endings in the singular when followed by a genitive, and the words are then written أَبُو (nom.), أَخَا (acc.), and حَمِي (gen.), e.g.

He struck the boy's brother

ضَرَبَ أَخَا الْوَلَدِ

He went to the President's father

ذَهَبَ إِلَى أَبِي الرَّئِيسِ

The dual and plural behave regularly in all respects, e.g.

She taught his two brothers

عَلَّمَتْ أَخَوَيْهِ

I spoke with their fathers (p.l.)

تَكَلَّمْتُ مَعَ آبَائِهِمْ

2. When the possessive pronouns are suffixed the long vowels are retained except in the first person singular (see Chapter V, paragraph 2, Note «g»), e.g.

Her father (nom.)

أَبُوهَا

Your (m. pl.) brother (acc.)

أَخَاكُمْ

His father-in-law (gen.)

جميعه
أبي
أخي

My father

nom. }
acc. }
gen. }

My brother

3. The word “possessor, owner”, ذُو , resembles أَبٌ and أَخٌ in the masculine. It also has a feminine form. Its full declension is as follows:

Singular	Masculine	Feminine
Nom.	ذُو	ذَاتُ
Acc.	ذَا	ذَاتَ
Gen.	ذِي	ذَاتِ
Dual		
Nom.	ذَوَا	ذَوَاتَا
Acc.	ذَوَيْ	ذَوَاتِي
Gen.	ذَوِي	ذَوَاتِي
Plural		
Nom.	ذَوُو	ذَوَاتُ
Acc.	ذَوِي	ذَوَاتِ
Gen.	ذَوِي	ذَوَاتِ

ذُو is used only in construct (and in the singular and dual with nouns only, not with suffixes). When ذُو and the noun it governs

form a compound adjective the noun should agree in definition with the noun being described, e.g.

Of importance

ذُو أَهْمِيَّةٍ

A learned man

رَجُلٌ ذُو عِلْمٍ

The learned man

الرَّجُلُ ذُو الْعِلْمِ

A two-legged beast

حَيَوَانٌ ذُو رِجْلَيْنِ

4. The word "mouth", فَمٌ (plural أَفْوَاهُ) is irregular in that it has an alternative set of case endings for use in construct only, in which the م is replaced by the letters و , ا and ي , i.e.

nom.

فُو

acc.

فَا

gen.

فِي

e.g. The child's mouth

فُو الْوَلَدِ

These forms are archaic, however. In everyday writing and speech the word فَمٌ is used with normal case endings whether in construct or not, e.g.

The child's mouth is big

فَمُ الْوَلَدِ كَبِيرٌ

The father opened the child's mouth

فَتَحَ الْأَبُ فَمَ الْوَلَدِ

CHAPTER VI

(Word List, Section 1)

EXERCISE 6:

The Nouns أَبٌ , أَخٌ etc.

هَذَا الْوَلَدُ أَخوكَ — هُمَا أُخْتَانِ وَأَنْتُمَا أَخَوَانِ — حَضَرَ
أَخِي وَأَخَذَ سَاعَتِي مِنِّي — غَابَ أَبُوهُ وَمَا كَتَبَ لَهُ مَكْتُوبًا —
ذَهَبْنَا لِأَيِّ الْوَلَدِ وَطَلَبْنَا مِنْهُ حُضُورَ أَجْتِمَاعِ الْأَبَاءِ — وَافَقْتُ
عَلَى قَوْلِهِ لِأَخِي — تَرَكَ أَبُونَا الْبَلَدَ وَسَافَرَ إِلَى الْخَارِجِ عَنْ
طَرِيقِ الْبَحْرِ — بَحَثْتُ فِي الْمَوْضُوعِ مَعَ أَخِيهِ — طَلَبَ
آبَاؤُهُمْ طَعَامًا مِنْ أَخَوَيْنَا — الْجِمَالُ مِنْ ذَوَاتِ الرُّؤُوسِ
الصَّغِيرَةِ — الْعُلَمَاءُ ذَوُو مَعْرِفَةٍ — الْبَقَرَةُ ذَاتُ عَيْنَيْنِ كَبِيرَتَيْنِ .

Her brother teaches in our town. My brother was absent from school today. His father came to us and asked us for his letter. My father wrote it to me. We taught him and his brother. She did not mention the subject to her brother, so we discussed it with him. He got in touch with their father. The servant asked their brothers for a drink. Good mares have (ذُو) long legs. The boy has a (ذُو) a big head.

CHAPTER VII

The Interrogative; The Vocative;
“All”, “Some” and “Both”

The Interrogative

A sentence can be made interrogative by introducing it by هَلْ or أ , except that أ is not ordinarily used in a sentence that starts with a word beginning with hamzat-al-wasl, and that هَلْ is not ordinarily used with a negative question, e.g.

Did you open the door?

هَلْ فَتَحْتَ الْبَابَ ؟

أَفَتَحْتَ الْبَابَ ؟

Is the book on the table?

هَلِ الْكِتَابُ عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ ؟

Did you not ask him?

أَمَّا سَأَلْتَهُ ؟

2. The particle أ asks the question about the word immediately following it, e.g.

Did you *open* the door?

أَفَتَحْتَ الْبَابَ ؟

Did you open the *door*?

الْبَابَ فَتَحْتَ ؟

Note

In the second example أ is used, for emphasis, with a hamzat-al-wasl, which is elided.

3. هَلْ may combine with the negative particle لَا to form هَلَّا which introduces the question "Why did not....", e.g.

Why did you not come? هَلَّا حَضَرْتَ ؟

4. In addition there are various interrogative pronouns and adverbs. The following are indeclinable:

Who, whom? مَنْ

What? مَا , مَاذَا (مَاذَا is used mainly before verbs, which helps to avoid confusion with the negative use of مَا).

Why? لِمَاذَا ، لِمَ

Where? أَيْنَ

When? مَتَى

How? كَيْفَ

How many? } كَمْ followed by an indefinite singular accusative, e.g.

How much } كَمْ أُخْتًا لَكَ ؟
How many sisters have you?

Whose? لِمَنْ , or مَنْ in construct, e.g.

Whose is this book? لِمَنْ هَذَا الْكِتَابُ ؟

Whose son are you? ابْنُ مَنْ أَنْتَ ؟

5. "Which", أَيُّ (m.) and أَيَّةُ (f.) is declinable. It is used either with definite plural, indefinite plural, or indefinite singular nouns in the genitive, or with مِنْ , e.g.

Which teacher attended the meeting?

أَيُّ مُعَلِّمٍ حَضَرَ الْإِجْتِمَاعَ؟

Which of the teachers attended the meeting?

أَيُّ الْمُعَلِّمِينَ حَضَرَ الْإِجْتِمَاعَ؟

Which teachers attended the meeting?

أَيُّ مُعَلِّمِينَ حَضَرُوا الْإِجْتِمَاعَ؟

Which of the teachers attended the meeting?

أَيُّ مِنْ الْمُعَلِّمِينَ حَضَرَ الْإِجْتِمَاعَ؟

Which meeting did you attend?

أَيَّ أَجْتِمَاعٍ حَضَرْتُ؟

Which of the girls did you know?

أَيَّةً مِنَ الْبَنَاتِ عَرَفْتُ؟

6. أَيُّ and أَيَّةُ mean "any" if they are not interrogative, e.g.

From any book

مِنْ أَيِّ كِتَابٍ

In any case (state of affairs)

فِي أَيَّةِ حَالٍ

The Vocative

7. The vocative particles in Arabic are يَا and أَيُّهَا (f. أَيَّتُهَا).

8. يَا is followed by a noun in the nominative case without either tanwin or definite article, e.g.

O director

يَا مُدِيرُ

O aunt

يَا خَالَهٗ

O Jerusalem

يَا قُدْسُ

O teachers (m.)

يَا مُعَلِّمُونَ

O you two boys

يَا وَلَدَانِ

Where the noun addressed is defined by a following genitive (i.e. is in the construct state) it is put into the accusative case, e.g. “Your Excellency”, **يَا سَعَادَةَ الْوَزِيرِ**. This accusative is occasionally found even where there is no introductory particle, e.g.

O sons of my country **بَنُو وَطَنِي** (from **بَنُونَ**)

9. **أَيُّهَا** and **أَيْتُهَا** are followed by the noun in the nominative case but with the definite article, e.g.

O men **أَيُّهَا الرِّجَالُ**

O teachers (f.) **أَيْتُهَا الْمُعَلِّمَاتُ**

أَيُّهَا cannot be followed by the construct state.

10. **يَا** and **أَيُّهَا** or **أَيْتُهَا** are often used in combination. **يَا** is then always placed first and the noun is governed by the rule for **أَيُّهَا**, e.g.

O aunt **يَا أَيْتُهَا الْخَالَهُ**

“All” and “Some” **بَعْضٌ — جَمِيعٌ — كُلٌّ**

11. “All” is generally rendered by **كُلٌّ**, which is a noun meaning “the whole”. It is used in four ways:

(a) followed by an indefinite noun in the genitive singular, when it means “each”, “every”, e.g.

Each man **كُلُّ رَجُلٍ**

Every city **كُلُّ مَدِينَةٍ**

- (b) followed by a definite noun in the genitive singular, e.g.

All the wood

كُلُّ الْخَشَبِ

The whole world

كُلُّ الْعَالَمِ

- (c) followed by a definite noun in the genitive plural, e.g.

All the birds

كُلُّ الطُّيُورِ

All the small chairs

كُلُّ الْكَرَاسِيِّ الصَّغِيرَةِ

- (d) alone, with the article or occasionally without it, when it mean "everybody", or "everything", e.g.

This is known to everybody

هَذَا مَعْرُوفٌ عِنْدَ الْكُلِّ

12. **كُلُّ** is a frequent synonym of **جَمِيعٌ** in senses (c), and (d) above, and **بَعْضٌ** is used in similar constructions to mean "some", e.g.

Sometimes

فِي بَعْضِ الْأَوْقَاتِ

They killed one another

قَتَلَ بَعْضُهُمُ الْبَعْضَ (أَوْ بَعْضًا)

(lit: some of them killed others of them)

They feared one another (f.pl.)

خَافَتْ بَعْضُهُنَّ مِنَ الْبَعْضِ (أَوْ مِنْ بَعْضٍ)

13. In senses (b) and (c), **كُلُّ**, **جَمِيعٌ** and **بَعْضٌ** may follow a noun and have a pronoun suffixed to them referring to that noun, e.g.

All the men came

جَاءَ الرِّجَالُ كُلُّهُمْ

In all these countries

فِي هَذِهِ الْبُلْدَانِ كُلِّهَا (أَوْ جَمِيعِهَا)

He visited some of the cities

زَارَ الْمُدُنَ بَعْضَهَا

14. كُلُّ (not جَمِيعٌ) followed by مِنْ means "each one of....",
e. g.

Each of the children ate an apple أَكَلَ كُلُّ مَنْ الْأَوْلَادِ تَفَاحَةً

15. بَعْضٌ and جَمِيعٌ are declinable. Since they are grammatically masculine singular a verb preceding them might be expected to be masculine singular. In fact the sense usually decides the gender of the preceding verb, and after them the logical gender and number are followed, e. g.

All the girls went and took their books with them ذَهَبَتْ كُلُّ الْبَنَاتِ وَأَخَذْنَ كُتُبَهُنَّ مَعَهُنَّ

Some of the ministers sat down جَلَسَ بَعْضُ الْوُزَرَاءِ

All their plans succeeded نَجَحَتْ جَمِيعُ مَشَارِعِهِمْ

He listened to all the children present اسْتَمَعَ إِلَى كُلِّ الْأَوْلَادِ الْحَاضِرِينَ

The same applies to a number of words with similar meanings, such as كَافَّةٌ , "all (of)", and أَغْلِيَّةٌ , "(the) majority (of)".

"Both"

16. كِلَا (feminine كِلْتَا) , "both", can be used only in the construct state. It is indeclinable with nouns but declinable (on the regular dual pattern) with pronouns, e. g.

Both the men كِلَا الرَّجُلَيْنِ

Both the schools كِلْتَا الْمَدْرَسَتَيْنِ

In both countries فِي كِلَا الْبَلَدَيْنِ

In both of them فِي كِلَيْهِمَا

I knew both of them

عَرَفْتُ كِلَيْهِمَا

كَلَا or كُنَّا are normally singular (on the basis that “both of them” means “each one of them”), e. g.

Both boys are tall

كِلَا الْوَلَدَيْنِ طَوِيلٌ

Both the trees are big

كُنَّا الشَّجَرَتَيْنِ كَبِيرَةً

CHAPTER VII

(Word List, Section 2)

EXERCISE 7:

The Interrogative; The Vocative;
“All”, “Some” and “Both”.

أَحْضَرْتَ أَجْتِمَاعَ لَجْنَةِ الْمُسْتَشَارِينَ الْيَوْمَ ؟ — لِمَنْ هَذِهِ
الْأَرَاذِي ؟ — هَلْ صَاحِبُهَا ذَلِكَ التَّاجِرُ الْأَجَنِّيُّ الْغَنِيُّ ؟ —
مِمَّنْ سَمِعْتَ الْخَبَرَ ؟ — أَيُّ صُحُفِيٍّ حَمَلَ عَلَى مَشْرُوعِ الْاِقْتِصَادِ
الْوَطَنِيِّ ؟ — فِي مَنْزِلٍ مَنْ سَكَنْتُمْ فِي السَّنَةِ الْمَاضِيَةِ ؟ — كَمْ
حَادِثًا وَقَعَ عَلَى الطَّرِيقِ فِي الصَّيْفِ الْمَاضِي ؟ — لِأَيِّ سَبَبٍ مَا
حَضَرْتُمْ الْاجْتِمَاعَ ؟ — ابْنُ مَنْ رَجَعَ أَمْسَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ مِنَ
الْجَبَلِ ؟ — يَا رَجُلُ ، هَلْ قَدَرْتَ عَلَى تَنْفِيزِ الْمَشْرُوعِ ؟ —
أَيُّهَا الْمَسْئُولُونَ ، مَاذَا عَمِلْتُمْ عِنْدَمَا بَلَغَكُمْ الْخَبَرُ ؟ — يَا
أَوْلَادُ ، لِمَاذَا فَتَحْتُمْ كُلَّ الشَّبَابِيكِ وَمَا فَتَحْتُمْ الْأَبْوَابَ ؟ —
أَسَاسُ الْحُرِّيَّةِ هُوَ التَّعَاوُنُ بَيْنَ الْحُكُومَةِ وَالشَّعْبِ كُلِّهِ —
نَجَحْنَا فِي الْمَسْأَلَتَيْنِ كُلْتَيْهِمَا وَمَا وَجَدْنَا آيَةَ صُعُوبَةٍ — أَمَا
حَضَرْتَ كِلَا أَجْتِمَاعِي لَجْنَةِ الْمُسْتَشَارِينَ ؟ — نَعَمْ حَضَرْتُهُمَا
كِلَيْهِمَا — يَا أَيُّهَا السَّفِيرُ أَسَكَنْتَ فِي بَعْضِ الْبُلْدَانِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ ؟ —
نَعَمْ سَكَنْتُ فِي بَعْضِهَا .

Did you (m. s.) find an important post during your visit to France
last month? What are the relations between you and your father?

Which universities have established relations with universities in foreign countries? With whom did they (f.pl.) return home from the market? Which servant worked for (served) you last year? Are some of the journalists present at the meeting of this council? Why did the authorities forbid both the foreign correspondents to enter the country? Which of the subjects did you not understand? Both these books are very expensive. Are the drinks ready? Are all these delegates experts? Whose carpet is this? O king of the Arabs, I and my friends are your servants. O fathers and mothers, did you not hear anything about your children? From whom did you (f.s.) hear the news? Has he opened all the doors? No, he has opened some of them. Some of the pupils visited each other. O my aunt!

CHAPTER VIII

Diptotes; The Comparative and Superlative of Adjectives

Diptotes

Some Arabic nouns and adjectives, called diptotes by European grammarians, do not take tanwin and have only two case-endings when they are indefinite : (ُ) in the nominative and (ـ) in the genitive and accusative, e.g.

Idle	كَسْلَانُ (nom.)	Schools (nom.)	مَدَارِسُ
	كَسْلَانِ (acc. and gen.)	In (some) schools	فِي مَدَارِسَ

When they are defined, whether by the definite article or by being put in construct, they take the usual three case-endings, e.g.

In the schools of the city	فِي مَدَارِسِ الْمَدِينَةِ
----------------------------	----------------------------

In an unvowelled text, therefore, the only occasion on which a diptote will "show" is in the accusative indefinite, e.g.

He built schools	بَنَى مَدَارِسَ
------------------	-----------------

A list of the categories of words that are diptotes is in Appendix C.

2. A few nouns and adjectives are not declined at all. The commonest are those ending in ي (alif maqsura), e.g.

A coffee-house (all cases)	مَقْهَى
----------------------------	---------

The coffee-house (all cases)

الْمَقْهَى

A stay or sojourn (all cases)

سُكْنَى

Where the alif maqsura is the final root letter of the word (as in مَقْهَى above) it carries tanwin of fatha when it is undefined.

Where the alif maqsura is an added letter (as in سُكْنَى above) it does not.

3. There are also many indeclinable proper names.

The Comparative and Superlative.

4. The comparative form of the adjective is of the pattern أَفْعَلُ, and is the same for all genders and numbers. All comparatives are diptotes, e.g.

Good

حَسَنٌ

Better

أَحْسَنُ

He is better than his brother

هُوَ أَحْسَنُ مِنْ أَخِيهِ

She is better than her sister

هِيَ أَحْسَنُ مِنْ أُخْتِهَا

In better times

فِي أَوْقَاتٍ أَحْسَنَ

5. The superlative is formed by making the comparative definite, either by putting it in construct, or by adding the definite article, e.g.

The smallest

الْأَصْغَرُ

The smallest boy

أَصْغَرُ وَلَدٍ

أَصْغَرُ الْأَوْلَادِ

الْوَلَدُ الْأَصْغَرُ

though where the context requires it a defined comparative may still have a comparative meaning, e.g.

The boy who is older than his sister الصَّبِيُّ الْأَكْبَرُ مِنْ أُخْتِهِ

6. The patterns أَصْغَرُ الْأَوْلَادِ and أَصْغَرُ وَلَدٍ may always be used regardless of gender, e.g.

The smallest girl

أَصْغَرُ بِنْتٍ
أَصْغَرُ الْبَنَاتِ

For this reason the student need never use the constructions described in paragraph 8 to 10 below, though he will need to be able to recognise them.

7. Some superlatives have a feminine form of the pattern الْفُعْلَى. The commoner of these are :

Masculine	Feminine	
الْأَكْبَرُ	الْكُبْرَى	The largest
الْأَصْغَرُ	الصُّغْرَى	The smallest
الْأَعْلَى	الْعُلْيَا	The highest
الْأَسْفَلُ ، الْأَذْنَى	السُّفْلَى ، الدُّنْيَا	The lowest
الْأَوَّلُ	الْأُولَى	The first
الْأَفْضَلُ ، الْأَحْسَنُ	الْفُضْلَى ، الْحُسْنَى	The best
الْأَعْظَمُ	الْعُظْمَى	The greatest
الْأَقْصَى	الْقُصْوَى	The farthest
الْأَطْوَلُ	الطُّوْلَى	The longest

8. In expressions of the pattern **الْبِنْتُ الصُّغْرَى** (i.e. a feminine noun followed by a superlative, each defined by the definite article) the feminine form of the superlative must be used if it exists. If it does not exist, the masculine form may be used, e.g.

The smallest island

الْجَزِيرَةُ الصُّغْرَى

The most beautiful girl

الْبِنْتُ الْأَجْمَلُ

9. The feminine form may also be used before a genitive plural provided the latter is defined, e.g.

The smallest (sing.) of the girls

صُغْرَى الْبَنَاتِ

10. Superlatives are sometimes found in the sound masculine and feminine plurals. These are normally only used in the following pattern:

They are the best teachers

هُمْ الْمُعَلِّمُونَ الْأَفْضَلُونَ

The smallest girls

الْبَنَاتُ الصُّغَرِيَّاتُ

11. Like the masculine singular superlative (paragraph 4 above), the feminine singular and masculine and feminine sound plurals may stand on their own with the definite article if the noun to which they refer has already appeared or is clearly understood, e.g.

She is the smallest (or youngest)

هِيَ الصُّغْرَى

They are the best (men)

هُمْ الْأَفْضَلُونَ

They are the smallest (or youngest) (women)

هُنَّ الصُّغَرِيَّاتُ

12. Some superlatives have broken plurals. Usually their meanings are idiomatic and should be learnt individually, e.g.

They are the great men of the party

هُمْ أَكْبَرُ الْحِزْبِ

13. Where an adjective (or a participle used as an adjective) is of a form that does not permit a comparative of the pattern أَفْعَلُ the comparative is formed by using أَكْثَرُ or أَشَدُّ with a noun (usually a verbal or abstract noun) in the accusative, e.g.

His school is more advanced than mine مَدْرَسَتُهُ أَكْثَرُ تَقْدَمًا مِنْ مَدْرَسَتِي

He is more industrious than I am هُوَ أَكْثَرُ اجْتِهَادًا مِنِّي

The superlative is formed by adding the definite article to the comparative or by putting it in construct, e.g.

They are the most industrious هُمْ الْأَكْثَرُ اجْتِهَادًا

My sister is the most industrious pupil أُخْتِي أَكْثَرُ التَّلَامِيذِ اجْتِهَادًا

On the same patterns the comparative "less" can be formed by using أَقَلُّ , e.g.

She is less frank than her sister هِيَ أَقَلُّ صِرَاحَةً مِنْ أُخْتِهَا

(For this use of the accusative see also Chapters IX and XVIII).

14. The above constructions are to be preferred to the more colloquial usage in which أَكْثَرُ (or an equivalent) is placed after the adjective, e.g.

His school is more advanced than mine مَدْرَسَتُهُ مُتَقَدِّمَةٌ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ مَدْرَسَتِي

15. Adjectives of colour or defects are of the form أَفْعَلُ , e.g.

		Singular	Dual	Plural
Red	Masculine	أَحْمَرُ	أَحْمَرَانِ	أَحْمَرٌ
	Feminine	أَحْمَرَاءُ	أَحْمَرَاوَانِ	
Black	Masculine	أَسْوَدُ	أَسْوَدَانِ	أَسْوَدٌ
	Feminine	أَسْوَدَاءُ	أَسْوَدَاوَانِ	
White	Masculine	أَبْيَضُ	أَبْيَضَانِ	أَبْيَضٌ
	Feminine	أَبْيَضَاءُ	أَبْيَضَاوَانِ	
Lame	Masculine	أَعْرَجُ	أَعْرَجَانِ	أَعْرَجٌ
	Feminine	أَعْرَجَاءُ	أَعْرَجَاوَانِ	
Blind	Masculine	أَعْمَى	أَعْمَيَانِ	أَعْمَى
	Feminine	أَعْمَاءُ	أَعْمَاوَانِ	

The comparative of such adjectives is formed by using أَشَدُّ , e.g.

A whiter house	بَيْتٌ أَشَدُّ بَيَاضاً
A redder house	بَيْتٌ أَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً
The deafest teacher	المُعَلِّمُ الْأَشَدُّ طَرَشاً

Apart from the common exceptions “whiteness”, بَيَاضٌ , and “blackness”, سَوَادٌ , the verbal nouns for the colours are on the form فُعْلَةٌ and for the defects on the form فَعْلٌ .

16. Where a subject is compared to itself in some respect a pronoun has to be suffixed to the مِنْ , e.g.

Beirut is more Western
than Eastern

بَيْرُوتُ أَكْثَرُ غَرْبِيَّةً مِنْهَا شَرْقِيَّةً

The weather to-day is bet-
ter than (it was) yester-
day

الطَّاقْسُ الْيَوْمَ أَجْمَلُ مِنْهُ أَمْسٍ

17. The nouns خَيْرٌ , “good”, and شَرٌّ , “evil”, are used as comparatives and superlatives without change of form, e.g.

Prayer is better than sleep

الصَّلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ النَّوْمِ

He is one of the worst pupils

هُوَ مِنْ شَرِّ التَّلَامِيذِ

The government adopted
the best policy

اتَّخَذَتِ الْحُكُومَةُ خَيْرَ السِّيَاسَاتِ

Neither خَيْرٌ nor شَرٌّ has a feminine form.

EXERCISE 8 :

Diptotes; The Comparative and Superlative
of Adjectives

هُوَ لَأَوْلَادُ سُعْدَاءَ وَلُطَفَاءَ — فَتَحْنَا الْأَبْوَابَ بِمَفَاتِيحَ
صَغِيرَةٍ — مَا فَهِمُوا كُلَّ هَذِهِ الْمَوَاضِيعِ الصَّغِيرَةِ — أَخُوكَ
مِنْ وَجْهَاءِ الْمَدِينَةِ — عَرَفْتُ كُلَّ هَذَا مِنْ مَكَاتِيبِ الْأَصْدِقَاءِ
— ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى لَنْدَنَ قَبْلَ أُسْبُوعَيْنِ — إِفْرِيْقِيَا هِيَ الْقَارَةُ
السُّودَاءَ — هُوَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْكَ يَوْمَ وَأَخْبَرُ مِنْكَ بِسَنَةِ — تَقْدُمُ
الْبِلَادِ وَالشَّعْبِ أَهْمُ بِكَثِيرٍ مِنَ الْحُرِّيَةِ الشَّخْصِيَّةِ — أَغْنَى
تَاجِرٍ هُوَ اللَّبْنَانِيُّ — هُوَ الْوَزِيرُ الْأَكْبَرُ بَيْنَ الْوُزَرَاءِ — أَنْتَ
صُغْرَى بَنَاتِ أَبِيكَ — عَيْنَاهُ حُمْرَاوَانِ أَمَّا عَيْنَاكَ فَأَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً
مِنْ عَيْنَيْهِ — شَرُّ الْأَوْلَادِ هُمُ الْكَسَالَى وَخَيْرُهُمُ الْمُجْتَهِدُونَ —
الْأَشْجَارُ خَضْرَاءُ فِي فَصْلِ الرَّيِّعِ وَصَفْرَاءُ فِي الْخَرِيفِ —
لِمَنْ ذَانِكَ الْبِسَاطَانِ الْأَصْفَرَانِ ؟ صَاحِبُهُمَا ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلُ
الْأَعْرَجُ — أَمَّا بُسْطِي فَكُلُّهَا حُمْرَاءُ — التُّجَّارُ فِي يَبْرُوتَ أَكْثَرُ
تَعَاوُنًا مَعَ الْبَلَدِيَّةِ مِنَ الْحَامِيْنَ — جَلَسَ الرَّجُلُ بِجَانِبِ وَجْهِهِ
هُوَ أَكْثَرُ النَّاسِ عِلَاقَةً بِالرَّئِيسِ .

We discussed difficult subjects. He did not listen to the lazy pupils.
The Minister of Public Works put many questions to the council.

The facts appeared from the government's declarations. O women, why are you sad? The President lived in the White House. The Mayor is tired after the long session. Her eyes are blacker than her brother's. The ambassadors lived in old residences. This is the most important of the new arrangements. He set up a more liberal government. The inhabitants of this house are blind. The weather today is colder than yesterday. From my point of view the execution of these arrangements in winter is more difficult than in summer. The lame girl is kinder than her sister. They are more intelligent than last year's students, thank God. The ambassador's daughter is the most beautiful lady in the room. The light is strongest on the eastern wall. The busiest dignitaries are members of the municipality.

CHAPTER IX

Adverbs

Arabic has few adverbs as such. An adverb is usually an adjective or noun in the accusative, e. g.

He wrote to me officially

كَتَبَ لِي رَسْمِيًّا

He went immediately

ذَهَبَ حَالًا

2. There are accusatives of time (ظَرْفُ زَمَانٍ), place (ظَرْفُ مَكَانٍ), manner (حَالٌ), reason (الْمَفْعُولُ لِأَجْلِهِ) and specification (الْتَّمِيزُ), and they are in answer to questions asking when, where, how, why and in what respect, e. g.

He went in the morning

ذَهَبَ صَبَاحًا

They assembled outside the house

اجْتَمَعُوا خَارِجَ الْبَيْتِ

He returned sadly

رَجَعَ حَزِينًا

The army advanced
in accordance with
the general's policy

تَقَدَّمَ الْجَيْشُ تَنْفِيزًا لِسِيَاسَةِ الْفَرِيقِ

He is more (in respect of) understanding

هُوَ أَكْثَرُ فَهْمًا

3. Two common adverbs with a nominative form are بَعْدُ, "yet", and فَحَسْبُ or حَسْبُ, "only", e. g.

He has not gone yet

مَا ذَهَبَ بَعْدُ

He understood not only easy the subjects but the difficult ones as well
مَا فَهِمَ الْمَوَاضِيعَ السَّهْلَةَ فَحَسَبُ بَلِ الصَّعْبَةَ أَيْضًا

4. Some indeclinable particles are also used as adverbs, e. g.

Only إِنَّمَا

Only فَقَطْ

Thus هَكَذَا

e.g. The man is only a poor scholar إِنَّمَا الرَّجُلُ عَالِمٌ فَقِيرٌ

He has not left his country finally; he has only gone abroad for a short visit مَا تَرَكَ بِلَادَهُ نِهَائِيًّا إِنَّمَا سَافَرَ إِلَى الْخَارِجِ فِي زِيَارَةٍ قَصِيرَةٍ

He has written only one book كَتَبَ كِتَابًا وَاحِدًا فَقَطْ

Is that the way you eat your food? أَهَكَذَا تَأْكُلُ الطَّعَامَ ؟

5. Often an adverb in English will become a prepositional phrase in Arabic, e. g.

He easily solved the problem (literally with ease) حَلَّ الْمَسْأَلَةَ بِسُهُولَةٍ

6. Further adverbial usages are given in Chapters XII and XVIII.

EXERCISE 9:

Adverbs

تَرَكْتُ وَطَنِي إِلَى أُرُوبَا طَلَبًا لِلْعِلْمِ — فَتَحَتِ الْحَادِمَةُ الشُّبَّانَ
بِشِدَّةٍ فَكَسَرَتْهُ — حَضَرَ كُلُّ الْمُوظَّفِينَ إِلَى الْمَكْتَبِ وَأَمَّا
مُحَمَّدٌ فَمَا حَضَرَ بَعْدُ — مَا طَلَبَ مِنَّا التَّعَاوُنَ مَعَهُ فَحَسَبُ
بَلٍ طَلَبَ أَيْضًا الْأَشْتِرَاكَ فِي كُلِّ أَعْمَالِهِ — شَرِبْتُ فَنَجَّانَ
قَهْوَةٍ أَمْسٍ صَبَاحًا وَمَا شَرِبْتُ أَيَّ شَيْءٍ الْيَوْمَ — أَنْتَ
مَسْئُولٌ لَدَى الشَّرِكَةِ عَنْ أَكْلِ الْعُمَالِ فَقَطْ — وَأَخِيرًا ،
وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ ، ظَهَرَتِ الْحَقِيقَةُ وَرَجَعَ السَّفِيرُ إِلَى سَفَارَتِهِ —
رَجَعَ أَخِي سَعِيدًا إِلَى الْبَيْتِ بَعْدَ غِيَابِ سَنَةٍ وَأَمَّا ابْنُ عَمِّكَ
فَرَجَعَ حَزِينًا — كَتَبَ الْمُرَاسِلُ جَيِّدًا عَنْ مَبْدِئِ الْأَشْتِرَاكِ
فِي ذَلِكَ الْبَلَدِ — تَعَلَّمَ الطُّلَابُ دُرُوسَهُمْ بِسُهُولَةٍ — مَا طَلَبَ
مِنِّي شَيْئًا إِنَّمَا قَدَّمَ لِي الْمَكْتُوبَ .

The journalist fell dead (killed) on the floor. Your sister has gone down from the mountain. Your brother has not yet gone down. He not only heard the news but discussed it with his friends. The press attacked foreign companies this morning. Summer is hotter than autumn and spring is much less cold than winter. He worked to realise (in realisation of) the company's policy. He has carried out his duties with effect (beginning) from last month. These men are wealthy, especially the merchants among them. We returned from the counsellor's residence by night. He did not go out today, he only (إنَّمَا) stayed at home because of illness.

CHAPTER X

The Imperfect Active of the Simple Verb;
The Future; **قَدْ** ; The Negative of the Imperfect

Imperfect Active

The imperfect tense expresses an action still unfinished and therefore refers to present, continuing or future action, e.g. **يَكْتُبُ** can mean "he writes", "he is writing", or "he will write".

2. The conjugation of the imperfect indicative active of **فَهِمَ** is as follows:—

3. m. s.	يَفْهَمُ	2. m. s.	تَفْهَمُ
3. m. du.	يَفْهَمَانِ	2. m. du.	تَفْهَمَانِ
3. m. pl.	يَفْهَمُونَ	2. m. pl.	تَفْهَمُونَ
3. f. s.	تَفْهَمُ	2. f. s.	تَفْهَمِينَ
3. f. du.	تَفْهَمَانِ	2. f. du.	تَفْهَمَانِ
3. f. pl.	يَفْهَمْنَ	2. f. pl.	تَفْهَمْنَ
1. m. s. and f. s.			أَفْهَمُ
1. m. pl. and f. pl.			نَفْهَمُ

3. As in the perfect, each verb has a characteristic vowel for the middle radical. Like the middle vowels of the perfect these are best learned individually. However, virtually, all verbs that take kasra

in the perfect take fatha in the imperfect, and damma in the perfect remains damma in the imperfect.

Future

4. In order to leave no doubt when the imperfect is being used to express the future tense, the particle **سَوْفَ** or the prefix **سَ** are used, e. g.

He will write } **سَوْفَ يَكْتُبُ**
سَيَكْتُبُ

Use of قَدْ

5. **قَدْ** with the perfect tense tends to emphasise the finality or completeness of the action, though it frequently adds nothing whatsoever to the meaning. **قَدْ** with the imperfect tense, however, emphasizes the incompleteness or tentativeness of the action, e. g.

We found (once and for all) **قَدْ وَجَدْنَا**

We may return; perhaps we will return **قَدْ نَرْجِعُ**

Negative of the Imperfect

6. The negative particle used with the imperfect is **لَا** e. g.

He does not look at her **لَا يَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهَا**

7. The negative particle **مَا** is used to negate the actual present, e. g.

He is not looking at her (now) **مَا يَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهَا**

8. The prefix **سَ** may not accompany a negative but the particle **سَوْفَ** may. "He will not write" is therefore **سَوْفَ لَا يَكْتُبُ**.
(A better way of expressing the future negative is with the particle **لَنْ** — see Chapter XV paragraph I «i».)

9. **قَدْ** cannot be used with a negative in the past tense but may with the present tense, e. g.

Perhaps we will not come back, or
We may not come back

قَدْ لَا نَرْجِعُ

and with compound tenses, e. g.

He may not have gone out

قَدْ لَا يَكُونُ خَرَجَ

EXERCISE 10:

The Imperfect Active of the Simple Verb;

The Future; **قَدْ** ; The Negative of the Imperfect

يَبْرُدُ الطَّقْسُ وَتَنْزِلُ الْأَمْطَارُ فِي فَصْلِ الشِّتَاءِ — يَسْمَعُونَنا
 مِنْ وَرَاءِ الْبَابِ وَلَا نَسْمَعُهُمْ — هَلْ تَتْرُكُ جَمِيعُ الْجُيُوشِ
 الْبِلَادَ فِي السَّنَةِ الْقَادِمَةِ ؟ — يَصْرِفُ الْكَسَالَى أَوْقَاتَهُمْ بِدُونِ
 عَمَلٍ — عَلَى أَيِّ أَسَاسٍ يَمْنَعُونَكُمْ مِنْ زِيَارَةِ أَقْرَبَائِكُمْ ؟ —
 تَطْلُبُ مَبَادِيءَ الْأَشْتِرَاقِيَّةِ حُرِّيَّةَ جَمِيعِ الشُّعُوبِ — إِلَى أَيْنَ
 تَذْهَبُ أَخْتُكَ كُلَّ أُسْبُوعٍ ؟ — هَلْ يَمْلِكُ هَذِهِ الْأَرْضَ كُلَّهَا
 رَجُلٌ وَاحِدٌ ؟ — سَيَرْجِعُونَ مِنْ فَرَنْسَا فِي أَوَائِلِ الْحَرِيفِ —
 سَتَعْرِضُ وَجْهَهُ نَظَرِهَا عَلَى أُمِّهَا لَدَى وَصُولِهَا إِلَى الْمَنْزِلِ —
 سَوْفَ تَعْرِفِينَ الْحَقِيقَةَ عِنْدَمَا تَنْشُرُ الصَّحْفُ التَّصْرِيحَ — إِنْ
 شَاءَ اللَّهُ تَرْجِعُونَ إِلَيْنَا مِنْ أَوْرُبَا بِصِحَّةٍ جَيِّدَةٍ — قَدْ حَضَرَ
 الْاجْتِمَاعَ كَثِيرٌ مِنَ النَّاسِ — قَدْ قَامَ الرَّئِيسُ بِافْتِتَاحِ الْجُلُوسَةِ
 بَعْدَ رُجُوعِهِ مِنْ زِيَارَةِ الْبِلَادِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ — قَدْ تَبَحَّثَ الْحُكُومَةُ
 فِي الْوَضْعِ الدَّاخِلِيِّ أَثْنَاءَ اجْتِمَاعِ مَجْلِسِ الْوُزَرَاءِ — قَدْ
 يَدْرُسُ الْمَسُوُولُونَ مَشْرُوعَ السَّكَنِ الْجَدِيدِ — لَا يَفْتَحُ
 الْخَادِمُ الْبَابَ إِلَّا عِنْدَمَا يَحْضُرُ رَئِيسُ الْمَكْتَبَةِ — يَا أَحْمَدُ

لِمَاذَا لَا تَسْكُنُ حَيْثُ يَسْكُنُ أَخُوكَ ؟ — سَوْفَ لَا يَحُلُّ
الرَّئِيسُ الْجَدِيدُ مَحَلَّ الرَّئِيسِ الْقَدِيمِ إِلَّا بَعْدَ شَهْرَيْنِ —
سَوْفَ لَا يَكْتُبُ الْمُرَاسِلُ التَّقْرِيرَ بِسَبَبِ مَرَضِهِ — قَدْ لَا
أَنْظُرُكَ قَبْلَ سَنَةٍ بِسَبَبِ غِيَابِي عَنْ أَرْضِ الْوَطَنِ — قَدْ لَا
يَقْدِرُ الطُّلَّابُ عَلَى فَهْمِ هَذِهِ الْمَسْأَلَةِ .

The newspapers discuss today the question of relations between Egypt and the other Arab countries. Where do you live (m. s.) at present? My two little daughters understand politics better than some ministers. When do you reach your office every day? The mayors are going to hold a special session at the end of next month. God willing, you will understand the truth of the matter. You will hear your friend's point of view at noon on your return from your office. When you go to them they will mention to you the names of some English correspondents. The people demonstrated against the government's socialist plan. I may write an article about the situation in Syria. The small boy is not writing because it is very cold (because of the severity of the cold). The chairman does not understand your point of view. The British forces will not leave the country for (before) a fortnight. The authorities may not prevent us from publishing the news about the recent events. She may not understand your plan properly.

CHAPTER XI

The Passive; The Participles; The Impersonal Use of the Passive

The Passive

The passive differs in form from the active only in having different vowels.

2. It is used much less than in English because good literary Arabic has no preposition corresponding with the English "by" to indicate the doer of an action. When the agent is known the active should be used, e.g. "this was written by Milton" should be rendered "Milton wrote this". (Modern journalese, however, often uses the compound preposition *مِنْ قِبَلِ* to express the agent).

3. *The Perfect Passive of فهِمَ*

3. m. s.	فُهِمَ	2. m. s.	فُهِمْتُ
3. m. du.	فُهِمَّا	2. m. du.	فُهِمْتُمَا
3. m. pl.	فُهِمُوا	2. m. pl.	فُهِمْتُمْ
3. f. s.	فُهِمَتْ	2. f. s.	فُهِمْتُ
3. f. du.	فُهِمَتَا	2. f. du.	فُهِمْتُمَا
3. f. pl.	فُهِمْنَ	2. f. pl.	فُهِمْتُنَّ
1. m. s. and f. s.			فُهِمْتُ
1. m. pl. and f. pl.			فُهِمْنَا

The Imperfect Passive

3. m. s.	يُفْهَمُ	2. m. s.	تُفْهَمُ
3. m. du.	يُفْهَمَانِ	2. m. du.	تُفْهَمَانِ
3. m. pl.	يُفْهَمُونَ	2. m. pl.	تُفْهَمُونَ
3. f. s.	تُفْهَمُ	2. f. s.	تُفْهَمِينَ
3. f. du.	تُفْهَمَانِ	2. f. du.	تُفْهَمَانِ
3. f. pl.	يُفْهَمْنَ	2. f. pl.	تُفْهَمْنَ
1. m. s. and f. s.			أُفْهَمُ
1. m. pl. and f. pl.			نُفْهَمُ

Participles

4. In Arabic the active participle indicates the doer of an action and the passive participle indicates that to which something is done. The terms "present" and "past" should not be used, for Arabic participles basically contain no idea of tense. They are thought of as nouns or adjectives and they have sound plurals.

5. The active participle of First Form verbs is of the pattern فَاعِلٌ, e.g. فَاهِمٌ, "one who understands"; عَامِلٌ, "doing, one who does, a factor or an agent" (the translation depends on the English idiom).

6. Although the active participle is a noun/adjective, it has verbal force except when it is in construct, e.g.

They wrote to us expressing their readiness

كَتَبُوا لَنَا مُعْلِنِينَ اسْتِعْدَادَهُمْ

He is the one who knows the truth

هُوَ الْعَارِفُ الْحَقِيقَةَ

but

He is the rider of the horse

هُوَ رَاكِبُ الْحِصَانِ

7. However, participles properly indicate states, not actions, and the active participle should not be used in literary Arabic to translate the English continuous present of a transitive verb such as "I am writing". This should normally be translated by the imperfect, أَكْتُبُ , and not by أَنَا كَاتِبٌ which means "I am a writer".

8. The passive participle is of the form مَفْعُولٌ , e.g. مَكْتُوبٌ , "that which is written", hence "letter, missive"; مَفْهُومٌ , "understood"; مَقْتُولٌ , "killed".

The Impersonal Use of the Passive.

9. Verbs that govern through prepositions are often used impersonally in the passive, e. g.

The problem was investigated

بُحِثَ فِي الْمَسْأَلَةِ

10. Particularly common is the impersonal use of the passive participle governing through a preposition, e.g.

The condemned man

الْمَحْكُومُ عَلَيْهِ

The man of whom something is requested

الْمَطْلُوبُ مِنْهُ

Note that the participle, being used impersonally, remains masculine singular whatever its noun, e. g.

The plans agreed upon

الْمَشَارِيعُ الْمُوَافَقُ عَلَيْهَا

The deceased (lit: the one to whom forgiveness has been given)

الْمَغْفُورُ لَهُ

The deceased (f. s.)

الْمَغْفُورُ لَهَا

and bears the case appropriate to its function in the sentence, e. g.

The deceased (m.pl.) left a great deal of money تَرَكَ الْمَغْفُورُ لَهُمْ أَمْوَالًا كَثِيرَةً

He went to the house of the deceased (f. s.) ذَهَبَ إِلَى بَيْتِ الْمَغْفُورِ لَهَا

11. Where the verb is transitive, taking a direct object without preposition, the passive participle is an ordinary noun subject to the ordinary rules of agreement, e. g.

The deceased (lit: the one to whom mercy has been shown) الْمَرْحُومُ

He went to the house of the deceased (f. s.) ذَهَبَ إِلَى بَيْتِ الْمَرْحُومَةِ

The deceased (m. pl.) left a great deal of money تَرَكَ الْمَرْحُومُونَ أَمْوَالًا كَثِيرَةً

EXERCISE 11:

The Passive; The Participles;
The Impersonal Use of the Passive

فِهِم مِّنَ التَّقَارِيرِ الْوَاصِلَةِ مِنْ يَبْرُوتَ أَنَّ الْمَجْلِسَ قَدْ اتَّفَقَ
عَلَى رَأْيِ رَئِيسٍ جَدِيدٍ — عُقِدَ اجْتِمَاعٌ كَبِيرٌ فِي مَكْتَبَةِ الْمَدِينَةِ —
لَا يُسَمَحُ لِلْعُمِّيِّ بِالطُّلُوعِ إِلَى الْجَبَلِ بِدُونِ أَدْلَاءٍ — النِّظَافَةُ
عَامِلٌ مِنْ عَوَامِلِ الصِّحَّةِ — كَاتِبُ الْمَكْتُوبِ صَحَافِيٌّ مَعْرُوفٌ
فِي يَبْرُوتَ — أَخِي رَاكِبُ الْحِصَانِ — سَأَلْتُ رَاكِبِي الْحَمِيرِ
عَنِ الطُّقْسِ فِي الْجِبَالِ — هُوَ ذَاهِبٌ الْيَوْمَ إِلَى مَكْتَبِهِ —
دُخُولُ الْكِلَابِ إِلَى الْحَدَائِقِ الْعَامَّةِ مَمْنُوعٌ لِأَسْبَابٍ مَعْرُوفَةٍ
— الْمَوَاضِعُ الْاِقْتِصَادِيَّةُ مَفْهُومَةٌ عِنْدَ أَعْضَاءِ اللِّجَةِ الْخَاصَّةِ —
حَادِثُ أَمْسٍ مَنشُورٌ فِي الْجَرَائِدِ الْيَوْمِيَّةِ — بُحِثُ فِي مَسْأَلَةِ
الْمَحْكُومِ عَلَيْهِمْ أَمَامَ قَاضٍ مَشْهُورٍ — بَدَأَتِ اللِّجَةُ صَرْفَ
الْمَبَالِغِ الْمُوَافِقِ عَلَيْهَا — أَعْرِفُ الْمَرْأَةَ الْمَطْلُوبَ مِنْهَا تَقْدِيمُ
مَقَالَةٍ إِلَى الْجَرِيدَةِ .

They were killed after they entered the borders at night. It was
learned from the newspapers that the government had forbidden

the entry of books published outside the country. The rider of the horse fell to the ground. The judge is sitting to hear the evidence. The sick man is able to go home. Demonstrations were prohibited during the night for the reasons mentioned. The presence of members of many famous societies has been requested. The matter will be investigated and a report published. The committee has been asked to hold a special session which all members will be permitted to attend. The men who were asked to participate in the meeting have arrived.

CHAPTER XII

The Verbal Noun; The Absolute Object;

غَيْرٌ ؛ عَدَمٌ

The verbal noun (مَصْدَرٌ) of First Form verbs must be learned individually (the pattern فَعْلٌ is common for transitive verbs and فُعُولٌ for intransitive). The verbal noun of a transitive verb may be active or passive, e.g. قَتْلُ الرَّجُلِ may mean either “the killing by the man” or “the killing of the man” according to context; but with intransitive verbs the meaning must be active, e.g. قُدُومُ الْوَلَدِ can only mean “the boy’s arrival”.

2. If both subject and object are mentioned, the subject is put in the genitive and the object is indicated by the accusative or by the preposition لِ with the genitive, e.g.

The boy’s taking of the apples

أَخَذُ الْوَلَدِ التُّفَّاحَ
أَخَذُ الْوَلَدِ لِلتُّفَّاحِ

If the verb governs its object through a preposition, then that preposition is used instead of لِ , e.g.

His indication of the entrance

إِشَارَتُهُ إِلَى الْمَدْخَلِ

The Absolute Object.

3. An adverbial meaning can be achieved by the construction known as that of the absolute object (الْمَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ), where a verb takes its own verbal noun as an indefinite object. Where the context warrants it, this construction adds force to the verb, e.g.

He beat him soundly ضَرَبَهُ ضَرْبًا

The army broke up completely اِنْكَسَرَ الْجَيْشُ اِنْكِسَارًا

4. The verbal noun in constructions of this sort may be qualified by an adjective or by being placed in construct, e.g.

He opposed them violently عَارَضَهُمْ مُعَارَضَةً شَدِيدَةً

He opposed them most violently عَارَضَهُمْ أَشَدَّ مُعَارَضَةٍ

He looked like a sick man ظَهَرَ ظُهُورَ الْمَرِيضِ

5. A verb may take the verbal noun of a different Form of the same verb as its object, e.g.

He worked very hard اِسْتَعْلَلَ شُغْلًا كَثِيرًا

عَدَمٌ , "Lack".

6. The words عَدَمٌ , "lack (of)", and عَدِيمٌ , "lacking (in)", have the peculiarity that they must be followed by a verbal noun in the genitive. They often provide in this way the equivalents of words in English beginning with "un-", "in-", etc. e.g.

Inexperience عَدَمُ الْخِبْرَةِ

Incapable عَدِيمُ الْقُدْرَةِ

غَيْرُ , "Other than".

7. The word غَيْرُ followed by a genitive is often used to make participles, nouns, pronouns and adjectives negative, e. g.

Unable, incapable

غَيْرُ قَادِرٍ

Not (nom.) Arab

غَيْرُ عَرَبِيٍّ

She struck somebody else (not him)

ضَرَبَتْ غَيْرَهُ

At some other time

فِي غَيْرِ وَقْتٍ

8. Such a compound is made definite by putting the article in front of the participle, not in front of غَيْرُ . Although the latter usage may occasionally be seen it should not be imitated. The participle agrees with the noun in number and gender and غَيْرُ carries the case appropriate to its position in the sentence, e.g.

The two unknown boys

الْوَلَدَانِ غَيْرُ الْمَعْرُوفَيْنِ

He listened to the unsuccessful students (m. pl.)

اسْتَمَعَ إِلَى الطُّلَّابِ غَيْرِ النَّاجِحِينَ

He visited the undesirable persons (m. pl.)

زَارَ الرِّجَالَ غَيْرَ الْمَرْغُوبِ فِيهِمْ

9. The only occasion when غَيْرُ must be written with the definite article is in the expression الْغَيْرُ , meaning "others", e. g.

Do to others as you would wish them to do to you

عَامِلِ الْغَيْرِ كَمَا تُرِيدُ أَنْ يُعَامِلُوكَ

EXERCISE 12:

The Verbal Noun; The Absolute Object;

غَيْرٌ ؛ عَدَمٌ

عَقَدَ الرَّئِيسُ اجْتِمَاعًا بَعْدَ تَبَاحُثِهِ مَعَ الوُزَرَاءِ فِي مَسْأَلَةِ
تَقْرِيرِ اللِّجَنَةِ — أَعْلَنَ الوَزِيرُ عَنِ اسْتِخْدَامِ مُوظِّفِينَ لِلْبَدْوِ
فِي وَضْعِ أُسُسٍ لِاِقْتِصَادِ الْبِلَادِ — سَبَبَ طُلُوعُهُ الْجَبَلَ كَسَرَ
رِجْلَهُ — حَمَلَتِ الصَّحَافَةُ عَلَى الْحُكُومَةِ حَمَلَةً شَدِيدَةً سَبَبَ
مُعَارَضَتِهَا لِلْمَشْرُوعِ — هَلْ مِنْ السَّهْلِ عَلَى الْأَجْنَبِيِّ فَهْمُ
أَسْبَابِ الْمَظَاهِرَةِ فَهْمًا جَيِّدًا؟ — نَزَلْنَا إِلَى الْمَطْعَمِ فَأَكَلْنَا أَكْلًا
وَشَرَبْنَا شُرْبًا — دَخَلُوا الْمَجْلِسَ وَجَلَسُوا جُلُوسَ الْوُجَهَاءِ
الْكِبَارِ — مَنَعَهُمْ مِنْ دُخُولِ غُرْفَةِ الْمُسْتَشَارِينَ شَرٌّ مَنَعَ —
قُتِلَ شَرٌّ قَتْلٍ — سَبَبَ خُرُوجِهِ مِنَ الْغُرْفَةِ هُوَ عَدَمُ مَعْرِفَتِهِ
لِلْمَوْضُوعِ الَّذِي بُحِثَ فِيهِ — وَصَلُوا إِلَى لُبْنَانَ أَمْسٍ لِعَدَمِ
تَمَكُّنِهِمْ مِنَ الذَّهَابِ إِلَى الْجَزِيرَةِ — مَنَعَ الْبَوَابُ الْمُسْتَشَارَ
مِنْ دُخُولِ الْمَجْلِسِ لِأَنَّهُ عَدِيمُ الْخِبْرَةِ — التَّضْرِيحُ غَيْرُ
مَذْكُورٍ فِي الصَّحِيفَةِ الْيَوْمِيَّةِ — سُمِحَ لِعَیْرِنَا بِالذَّهَابِ إِلَى
الْمَدِينَةِ — انْتَهَتْ دُرُوسُ الطُّلَابِ غَیْرِ الْقَادِرِينَ عَلَى النِّجَاحِ .

We go to school to study the Arabic language. The ministers' discussions caused a report to be drafted (وضع) and presented to the Chamber (the drafting of a report and its presentation). Listening to news bulletins taught us to understand the political situation clearly. Dirt is the reason for the spreading of many diseases and cleanliness prevents some of them. They discussed the question thoroughly. The press attacked the government violently yesterday. He was foully done to death. The whole country - government, Parliament and people - strongly opposed the foreign experts' projects. Lack of industry prevented the officials from taking the required decisions. They have not left the factory yet because they are unable to finish their work before noon. (use (1) عَدَم and (2) غَيْرُ). The deaf man is unable to hear (lacking in hearing). In Lebanon the winter season is not hot. His declaration is not true. He did not listen to other people's questions. Journalism is an occupation which is not always understood among the people.

CHAPTER XIII

The Perfect and Imperfect of the Verb كَانَ , "To be"; Tenses; "To have"

كَانَ "To be".

The verb "to be" is a regular specimen of a "hollow" verb (see Chapter XXX); it is introduced here because of its usefulness.

Perfect:

3. m. s.	كَانَ	2. m. s.	كُنْتَ
3. m. du.	كَانَا	2. m. du.	كُنْتُمَا
3. m. pl.	كَانُوا	2. m. pl.	كُنْتُمْ
3. f. s.	كَانَتْ	2. f. s.	كُنْتِ
3. f. du.	كَانَتَا	2. f. du.	كُنْتُمَا
3. f. pl.	كُنْنَ	2. f. pl.	كُنْنِ
1. m. s. and f. s.		كُنْتُ	
1. m. pl. and f. pl.		كُنَّا	

Imperfect:

3. m. s.	يَكُونُ	2. m. s.	تَكُونُ
3. m. du.	يَكُونَانِ	2. m. du.	تَكُونَانِ

3. m. pl.	يَكُونُونَ	2. m. pl.	تَكُونُونَ
3. f. s.	تَكُونُ	2. f. s.	تَكُونِينَ
3. f. du.	تَكُونَانِ	2. f. du.	تَكُونَانِ
3. f. pl.	يَكُنَّ	2. f. pl.	تَكُنَّ
1. m. s. and f. s.		أَكُونُ	
1. m. pl. and f. pl.		نَكُونُ	

2. The predicate of كَانَ is in the accusative, e. g.

Muhammad was a teacher كَانَ مُحَمَّدٌ مُعَلِّمًا

We were seated كُنَّا جَالِسِينَ

but Muhammad is a teacher مُحَمَّدٌ مُعَلِّمٌ
(See Ch. I para. 12)

Note: the expression "there was" in English frequently leads to confusion over the predicate. In the sentence "there was a carpet on the floor in the office", "carpet" is the grammatical subject, not the predicate, and will be in the nominative case in Arabic, e.g.

كَانَ فِي الْمَكْتَبِ بَسَاطٌ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ .

3. When كَانَ is negative it may also take its predicate in the genitive after ب , e.g.

We were not present مَا كُنَّا بِحَاضِرِينَ

Some other verbs that share one or more of the characteristics of كَانَ will be found in Chapter XXXIV.

4. Since the present tense of "to be" is generally expressed with-

out a verb, the imperfect of **كَانَ** generally indicates "will be" (see next paragraph), e.g.

This will be good

يَكُونُ هَذَا طَيِّبًا

but This is good

هَذَا طَيِّبٌ

Tenses.

5. The verb **كَانَ** can be used to form tenses in addition to the perfect and imperfect. The full range of tenses in Arabic is as follows:

He writes	}	يَكْتُبُ
He is writing		
He will write, or	}	يَكْتُبُ ، سَيَكْتُبُ سَوْفَ يَكْتُبُ
He is going to write		
He will be writing		يَكُونُ يَكْتُبُ
He was writing	}	كَانَ يَكْتُبُ
He used to write		
He wrote habitually		
He wrote (once)	}	(قَدْ) كَتَبَ
He has written		
He will have written		يَكُونُ (قَدْ) كَتَبَ
He had written		كَانَ (قَدْ) كَتَبَ

6. The subject usually comes between **كَانَ** and the main verb, and the rules for agreement of subject and verb given in Chapter II apply, e.g. **كَانَ الْوَلَدَانِ يَكْتُبَانِ**.

“To have”.

7. Arabic lacks any verb corresponding with the English “to have” indicating possession. Instead it uses the prepositions عِنْدَ, لِ,

لَدَى or مَعَ , e.g.

The lady has the eggs

(lit. the eggs are with the lady)

الْبَيْضُ مَعَ السَّيِّدَةِ

I have children (lit. to me are children)

لِي أَوْلَادٌ

I did not have time

مَا كَانَ لَدَيَّ وَقْتُ

I had a large house
in those days

كَانَ عِنْدِي بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ فِي تِلْكَ الْأَيَّامِ

8. There are certain distinctions to be observed in the use of these prepositions. لِ indicates intimate possession or ownership; عِنْدَ and لَدَى possession of the object not actually on the person or in his company; مَعَ possession on the person or in his company.

Note: the second example above (لِي أَوْلَادٌ) is an example of a sentence consisting of an indefinite subject and a prepositional phrase but with no verb. In such sentences the subject must follow the predicate (c. f. Chapter II, paragraphs 7 and 13).

There are many rooms in
that house

فِي ذَلِكَ الْبَيْتِ غُرَفٌ كَثِيرَةٌ

There is a car at the door

عِنْدَ الْبَابِ سَيَّارَةٌ

CHAPTER XIII

(Word List, Section 3)

EXERCISE 13 :

The Perfect and Imperfect of the
Verb كَانَ , "To be"; Tenses; "To have"

كَانَتِ الْعَصَافِيرُ عَلَى الْأَشْجَارِ — كُنْتُمْ سُعْدَاءَ لَمَّا كُنْتُمْ صِغَارًا
— كَانَتْ حُرِّيَّةُ الصَّحَافَةِ مَمْنُوعَةً قَبْلَ سِنِينَ كَثِيرَةٍ — كَانَ
الْأَوْلَادُ جَالِسِينَ فِي حَدِيقَةِ الْبَلَدِيَّةِ — كُنْتُ غَائِبًا عِنْدَمَا
حَضَرْنَا إِلَيْكُنَّ — سَنَكُونُ غَدًا فِي أَمِيرِكَا إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ —
بَعْضُ السَّيِّدَاتِ يَلْبَسْنَ ثِيَابًا طَوِيلَةً عِنْدَمَا يَكُونُ الطَّقْسُ
بَارِدًا — قَدْ يَكُونُ مِنَ الصَّعْبِ التَّعَاوُنُ مَعَهُمْ بِسَبَبِ الْفُرُوقِ
الْكَبِيرَةِ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَهُمْ — سَيَكُونُ رَئِيسُ الْمُسْتَشَارِينَ يَعْمَلُ
عَلَى كِتَابَةِ التَّقْرِيرِ عِنْدَمَا يَكُونُ الْأَعْضَاءُ فِي طَرِيقِهِمْ إِلَيْنَا —
كَانَ يَقْصِدُ مِنْ تَصْرِيحِهِ إظهارَ أَسْبَابِ ارْتِفَاعِ الضَّرَائِبِ
الْمَحَلِّيَّةِ — كَانَ الْمُعَلِّمُونَ وَالْمُعَلَّمَاتُ قَدْ صَرَفُوا الطُّلَابَ
بَعْدَ ظَهْرِ ذَلِكَ الْيَوْمِ — سَنَكْتُبُ لَهُ مَكْتُوبًا طَوِيلًا بَعْدَمَا
نَكُونُ قَدْ بَحَثْنَا الْمَوْضُوعَ بَحْثًا عَمِيقًا — كَانَتِ الْمَقَالَاتُ قَدْ
نُشِرَتْ فِي جَمِيعِ الْجَرَائِدِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ — كَانَ مَعِيَ كِتَابُ عَرَبِيٍّ
وَاحِدٌ وَكَانَ مَعَكَ كِتَابَانِ إِنْكِلِيزِيَّانِ — حَمَلَ الْمُوظَّفُ مَبَالِغَ

كَبِيرَةً عِنْدَمَا سَافَرَ بِالسَّيَّارَةِ الْعُمُومِيَّةِ — لِلْاِقْتِصَادِ الْوَطَنِيِّ
أَهْمِيَّةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ فِي تَقَدُّمِ هَذِهِ الْبِلَادِ كَمَا لَهُ فِي غَيْرِهَا مِنْ بُلْدَانِ
الْعَالَمِ — كَانَ لِلْوَجْهِ تِمَثَالٌ عِنْدَ مَدْخَلِ الْحَدِيقَةِ — كَانَ
عِنْدَهُ أَنَاسٌ كَثِيرُونَ عِنْدَمَا دَخَلْنَا بَيْتَهُ — سَوْفَ لَا يَكُونُ
لَدَيَّ وَقْتُ مُنْذُ الْيَوْمِ لِلسَّفَرِ إِلَى فَرَنْسَا — مَا كَانَ لَدَيْهِ أَيُّ
دَلِيلٍ وَاضِحٍ عَلَى مَقْدِرَةِ الْجَيْشِ عَلَى الْاِشْتِرَاكِ فِي الْحَمَلَةِ .

The aim of the demonstration was to prevent the authorities from carrying out their decisions. The rain (pl.) was very heavy (violent) yesterday evening. We were going to the Ministry of Economy when you (pl.) were on your way home. It might be easier for you (f.pl.) to establish a ladies' committee in your village than to take part in our meetings. By the time (when) the minister goes to the Assembly, the session will have been convened. Your friend Ahmad will have served two years in the army in one month's time (after one month). Your father had spent everything before he asked us for help. The merchant has close (strong) relations with the local authorities. I had no time to visit the patient. What will be your responsibility towards your children? The director of the company has great influence on the government's arrangements for the execution of some projects. There are many fish in the river. The President has many responsibilities. She had not only dogs but other animals in her house as well.

CHAPTER XIV

Conjugation of the Indicative, Subjunctive, Jussive and Imperative; The Emphatic

The imperfect has four moods : indicative, indicating actions that actually take place; subjunctive, indicating expected or hypothetical actions; jussive, primarily indicating indirect commands; and imperative, expressing commands. The following table shows the changes in form involved :

<u>Active</u>				
Person	Impf. Indic.	Subjunctive	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s. :	يَكْتُبُ	يَكْتُبَ	يَكْتُبْ	
3. m. du. :	يَكْتُبَانِ	يَكْتُبَا	يَكْتُبَا	
3. m. pl. :	يَكْتُبُونَ	يَكْتُبُوا	يَكْتُبُوا	
3. f. s. :	تَكْتُبُ	تَكْتُبَ	تَكْتُبْ	
3. f. du. :	تَكْتُبَانِ	تَكْتُبَا	تَكْتُبَا	
3. f. pl. :	يَكْتُبْنَ	يَكْتُبْنَ	يَكْتُبْنَ	
2. m. s. :	تَكْتُبُ	تَكْتُبَ	تَكْتُبْ	اَكْتُبْ
2. m. du. :	تَكْتُبَانِ	تَكْتُبَا	تَكْتُبَا	اَكْتُبَا
2. m. pl. :	تَكْتُبُونَ	تَكْتُبُوا	تَكْتُبُوا	اَكْتُبُوا
2. f. s. :	تَكْتُبِينَ	تَكْتُبِي	تَكْتُبِي	اَكْتُبِي

Person	Impf. Indic.	Subjunctive	Jussive	Imperative
2. f. du. :	تَكْتُبَانِ	تَكْتُبَا	تَكْتُبَا	اَكْتُبَا
2. f. pl. :	تَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبْنَ	اَكْتُبْنَ
1. s. :	اَكْتُبْ	اَكْتُبْ	اَكْتُبْ	
1. pl. :	نَكْتُبْ	نَكْتُبْ	نَكْتُبْ	

The imperative is formed by dropping the initial *ت* of the 2nd person of the jussive. If what is left begins with a vowelised consonant (as is the case with some weak verbs and some derived forms), it is the imperative. If it does not, a hamzat-al-wasl (أ) must be added. The vowel on this hamza is kasra unless the characteristic vowel of the verb is damma, in which case it is damma, e. g.

شَرِبَ	2nd person singular jussive	تَشْرَبْ
	imperative	اشْرَبْ
ذَكَرَ	2nd person singular jussive	تَذْكُرْ
	imperative	اذْكُرْ

The only exception to this rule is that the imperative of the Fourth Form verb (Chapter XXI) begins with hamzat-l-qat' and carries a fatha.

The Emphatic

3. The emphatic form of the verb, which is very little used in modern Arabic, is formed by adding *نَ* or *نَّ* to the jussive. It is used for strong commands and, with *لَ*, for strong statements, e.g.

Never say that	لَا تَقُولَنَّ ذَلِكَ
I promise you	لَأَعِدَّنَكَ

CHAPTER XV

Use of the Subjunctive and Jussive; The Jussive and Imperative of كَانَ

Use of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive is used after the following particles :

- | | | | | |
|-----|---------|-------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| (a) | أَنَّ | “that” or “to” | He asked me to go
(that I should go) | طَلَبَ مِنِّي أَنْ أَذْهَبَ |
| (b) | لِ | “in order to” | We sat down in
order to listen
to him | جَلَسْنَا لِنَسْمَعَهُ |
| (c) | لِأَنَّ | “in order to” | We sat down in
order to listen
to him | جَلَسْنَا لِأَنَّ نَسْمَعَهُ |
| (d) | كَيْ | “in order to” | We sat down in
order to listen
to him | جَلَسْنَا كَيْ نَسْمَعَهُ |
| (e) | لِكَيْ | “in order to” | We sat down in
order to listen
to him | جَلَسْنَا لِكَيْ نَسْمَعَهُ |
| (f) | حَتَّى | “so that, in
order to,
until” | They beat them
in order to kill
them | ضَرَبُوهُمْ حَتَّى يَقْتُلُوهُمْ |
- but when حَتَّى means “until”
and refers to an already completed action, the verb is in the perfect tense; e.g.
- | | | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| | | They beat them until they killed them | ضَرَبُوهُمْ حَتَّى قَتَلُوهُمْ |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
- | | | | | |
|-----|----------|------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| (g) | أَلَّا | “that...not” | He asked me not
to go | طَلَبَ مِنِّي أَلَّا أَذْهَبَ |
| (h) | لَعَلَّا | “so that....
..not, lest” | We went out so
that we should
not hear them | خَرَجْنَا لَعَلَّا نَسْمَعَهُمْ |

- (i) لَنْ "not(future), I shall not go never" (ever) لَنْ أَذْهَبَ
- (j) فَ "so that" Won't you come to my house so that we can go to Beirut together? أَلَا تَحْضُرُ إِلَى بَيْتِي فَتَذْهَبَ مَعًا إِلَى بَيْرُوتَ ؟

2. It is often possible and frequently better style to avoid using the subjunctive by using the verbal noun, e.g.

I asked him to go

or

I ordered her to look for it

or

طَلَبْتُ مِنْهُ أَنْ يَذْهَبَ

طَلَبْتُ ذَهَابَهُ

أَمَرْتُهَا بِأَنْ تَبْحَثَ عَنْهُ

أَمَرْتُهَا بِالْبَحْثِ عَنْهُ

Use of the Jussive

3. The jussive is used :

- (a) with لَمْ to express the negative in the past, e. g.

We have not eaten it or
We did not eat it

لَمْ نَأْكُلْهُ

This negative with لَمْ and the jussive is used more frequently than the perfect with مَا , which can at times be ambiguous (Chapter II, paragraph 6, and Chapter VII, paragraph 4).

- (b) with the particle لَمَّا , to mean "not yet", e. g.

He has not gone yet

لَمَّا يَذْهَبُ

- (c) with لَا for prohibitions, e. g.

Don't leave me

لَا تَتْرُكْنِي

Don't (masc. pl.) do that

لَا تَعْمَلُوا ذَلِكَ

(d) in indirect commands. The jussive used in this way is always preceded by the particle لِ and this in turn may be preceded by فَ or وَ "so", in which case the لِ loses its vowel, e. g.

Let it be so

لِيَكُنْ كَذَلِكَ or فَلْيَكُنْ كَذَلِكَ

He ordered us to go,
so let's go

أَمَرَنَا بِالذَّهَابِ فَلْنَذْهَبْ

Let him go and hang
himself

لِيَذْهَبْ وَلِيَشْنُقْ نَفْسَهُ

(e) A negative indirect command is formed by لَا with the jussive, e. g.

Let us not go

لَا نَذْهَبْ

(f) after the expression مَا لَمْ. This is one way of rendering "unless" in the sense of "as long as....not", e. g.

I shall not sit unless
you sit too

لَا أَجْلِسُ مَا لَمْ تَجْلِسْ أَنْتَ أَيْضاً

i.e. as long as you do not sit

Note :

(a) The sukun of the jussive changes to kasra before hamzat-al-wasl, e.g.

He did not write the lesson

لَمْ يَكْتُبِ الدَّرْسَ

(b) Do not confuse لَمَّا + jussive, "not yet", with لَمَّا +

perfect meaning "when". لَمَّا يَنْجَحْ فِي مَشْرُوعِهِ means "he has not yet succeeded in his plan". In order to express "when he succeeds in his plan" use حِينَ , حِينَئِذَا , or عِنْدَمَا .

Reserve لَمَّا in the sense of "when" for use with the perfect tense, e.g.

When he succeeded in his plan لَمَّا نَجَحَ فِي مَشْرُوعِهِ

Jussive and Imperative of كَانَ .

4. The jussive of كَانَ is يَكُنْ (for the full conjugation see Chapter XXX, Hollow verbs). The imperative is derived from the jussive in accordance with the rule, i.e. كُنْ (masculine singular), كُونِي (feminine singular) etc.

EXERCISES 14 AND 15:

Use of the Subjunctive and Jussive;
The Imperative; The Jussive and
Imperative of كَانَ

طَلَبَ وَزِيرُ الْعَمَلِ مِنَ الْفَلَاحِينَ أَنْ يَقْبَلُوا مَشْرُوعَ الْحُكُومَةِ
الْجَدِيدِ — ذَهَبَ جَمِيعُ مُمَثِّلِي الشَّعْبِ وَالزُّعَمَاءِ إِلَى الْقِيَادَةِ الْعَامَّةِ
لِكَيْ يَعْرِضُوا مَطَالِبَهُمْ — أَمَرَ الضَّابِطُ الْبُولِيسَ أَلَّا يَسْمَحَ
لِلْجُمْهُورِ بِالْدُّخُولِ إِلَى مَنَاطِقَةِ آبَارِ الزَّيْتِ — عَمِلَتِ الْحُكُومَةُ
عَلَى الْمَحَافَظَةِ عَلَى حُقُوقِ الْعُمَالِ لِئَلَّا تَحْدُثَ أَضْطِرَابَاتٌ فِي
الْمِنَاطِقَةِ لَا سِوَمَا فِي الْقِطَاعِ الْجَنُوبِيِّ — لَنْ تُنْشَرَ الْمَقَالَةُ قَبْلَ
رُجُوعِ الْمُرَاسِلِ مِنْ مِصْرَ — لَمْ نَقْدِرْ عَلَى زِيَارَةِ الْعَاصِمَةِ
بِسَبَبِ الْمُظَاهَرَاتِ السِّيَاسِيَّةِ — لَا نَطْلُبُ مِنْكُمْ عَدَمَ الْإِسْتِمْرَارِ
فِي مِثْلِ هَذِهِ السِّيَاسَةِ بَلْ نَطْلُبُ مِنْكُمْ أَنْ لَا تَتْرُكُوهَا قَبْلَ أَنْ
تَدْرُسُوهَا دَرْسًا تَامًّا وَتَعْرِفُوا فَايْدَتَهَا لِمَصْلَحَةِ الشَّعْبِ — هُوَ
عَدِيمُ الْخِبْرَةِ فِي الشُّؤُونِ السِّيَاسِيَّةِ وَلِذَلِكَ لَنْ يَنْجَحَ فِي عَمَلِهِ
كَمَحَامٍ — لَمْ تَصْدُرْ آيَةُ جَرِيدَةِ أَمْسٍ بِسَبَبِ الْعِيدِ الرَّسْمِيِّ
— لَا أَسْمَحُ لَكَ بِالْخُرُوجِ مِنْ بَيْنِنَا مَا لَمْ تُشْرِي فِتْنَجَانًا

شَايٍ — لَا تَنْقُلُوا الْبُسْطَ مِنْ هُنَا إِلَّا بَعْدَ أَنْ تَدْفَعُوا
 الضَّرَائِبَ — لَا تَكْذِبْ يَا بُنَيَّ بَلِ اقْطَعْ عَلَى نَفْسِكَ عَهْدًا أَنْ
 تَقُومَ بِمَسْئُولِيَّاتِكَ — لَمَّا يَكْتُبِ الرَّئِيسُ تَقْرِيرَهُ عَنْ رَفْضِهِ
 مَطَالِبَ الْعُمَّالِ — هَذَا أَمْرٌ ذُو شَأْنٍ فَلْنَعْمَلْ كُلُّنَا عَلَى تَحْقِيقِهِ
 — اشْرَبِ الْحَلِيبَ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَذْهَبَ إِلَى عَمَلِكَ — اِجْتَحِ
 الْمَوْضُوعَ مَعَهُ وَأَفْهَمْهُ جَيِّدًا — اذْكُرِي أَسْمَكَ عِنْدَمَا تَطْلُبِينَ
 عَمَلًا مِنْهُ — اُسْكُنُوا فِي هَذَا الْبَيْتِ لِأَنَّهُ صِحِّيٌّ أَكْثَرَ مِنْ
 ذَلِكَ — قَالَ اللَّهُ لِيَكُنْ نُورٌ فَكَانَ نُورٌ — لَمْ يَكُنْ مِنْ
 السَّهْلِ عَلَى الدُّوَلِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ أَنْ تَقْطَعَ عِلَاقَاتِهَا مَعَ أَيَّةِ دَوْلَةٍ
 عَرَبِيَّةٍ أُخْرَى — كُونِي طَيِّبَةً أَيُّهَا الْفَتَاةُ الْحُلُوةُ وَلِيَكُنْ ذَكِيًّا
 مَنْ أَرَادَ .

Note : In this exercise do not use the verbal noun to avoid the subjunctive.

The agency will move its centre to another place so as to be near the capital. No law has yet been issued to prevent the raising of the prices of foodstuffs. Coffee is ready so let us drink it before it gets cold. The armies will be forbidden to carry out any military movements until orders are issued to them. The chairman of the committee held a meeting with the doctors' delegation in order to discuss with them some matters concerning health in schools and institutes. Let us go up the mountain to look for some snow. Let us cross the river (let the crossing of the river be) from the northern side. With effect from the first of next month there will

be no voluntary military service. The conference will not succeed unless it is convened on a large scale and is attended by representatives of the people of all districts. Disturbances of this sort have never happened before in this country. Let us go to the President of the Republic so that he may hear our problems. Be (m. pl.) kind to (مع) all people, especially to the poor and weak. Let us not be sad, let us eat, drink and be merry.

CHAPTER XVI

The Particles **لَكِنَّ** , **أَنَّ** , **إِنَّ** , etc;
Sequence of Tenses; The **لَا** of Categorical
Negation

The particles **إِنَّ** and its sisters are normally followed immediately by the subject of the sentence, which may be a noun or a pronominal suffix. This goes into the accusative case, and the predicate is then put into the nominative.

2. Sentences in Arabic are often introduced by **إِنَّ** , which need seldom be translated, and especially not by "Verily". Where it is used in the Arabic text to lend emphasis it may perhaps safely be rendered by "Indeed". The predicate is sometimes preceded by the particle **لَ** though its use is optional. It usually has little effect, but in some cases it too may add emphasis, e. g.

His two sons are indeed big

إِنَّ وَلَدَيْهِ لَكَبِيرَانِ

3. **أَنَّ** is a particle expressing the conjunction "that" introducing a subordinate clause, e.g.

I know that the problem is
difficult

أَعْرِفُ أَنَّ الْمُسْكَلَةَ صَعْبَةٌ

and, like **إِنَّ** , it is followed by its subject in the accusative and its predicate in the nominative. It frequently has pronominal suffixes attached to it (**أَنَّهَا** , **أَنَّهُ** etc.), e. g.

I know that he is an ignorant man **أَعْرِفُ أَنَّهُ رَجُلٌ جَاهِلٌ**

(Note that in this sentence it is the pronominal suffix that is the subject of the subordinate clause and that is, therefore, in the accusative case.)

4. In sentences in which **إِنَّ** or **أَنَّ** are not followed at once by the subject in the accusative, they may take a suffixed **هُ**, e.g.

I know that nothing like **أَعْلَمُ أَنَّهُ لَا يُوجَدُ فِي اللُّغَةِ**
this is found in English **الْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةِ شَيْءٌ مِثْلُ هَذَا**

However, where a sentence that begins with **إِنَّ** or **أَنَّ** consists only of an indefinite subject and a prepositional phrase it is better if the prepositional phrase precedes the subject (c.f. note in Chapter XIII, paragraph 8), e.g.

There is a man in the house **إِنَّ فِي الْبَيْتِ رَجُلًا**
I know that there is a man in **أَعْرِفُ أَنَّ فِي الْبَيْتِ رَجُلًا**
the house

5. When the first personal pronominal suffixes are added to either **إِنَّ** or **أَنَّ**, two alternative forms are found :

إِنِّي	إِنَّا	
إِنِّی	إِنَّنَا	etc.

6. **أَنَّ** (Chapter XV, paragraph 1 (a)) is used instead of **أَنَّ** to mean "that" after verbs expressing doubt, hope, fear, intention, command or necessity. As stated in Chapter XV, it is then followed by the subjunctive, e.g.

I knew that you would go عَرَفْتُ أَنَّكَ سَتَذْهَبُ
but I was afraid that you would go خِفْتُ أَنْ تَذْهَبَ

7. أَنْ may also be followed by the perfect to begin a clause referring to past time, e. g.

I heard that the doctor had سَمِعْتُ أَنْ مَرَضَ الطَّيِّبُ
fallen ill

8. The verb قَالَ , “to say”, provides an exception to these rules, as it is followed by إِنَّ to introduce indirect speech, e.g.

He said that the ship had قَالَ إِنَّ السَّفِينَةَ قَدْ وَصَلَتْ
arrived

9. It is also preferable to use إِنَّ rather than أَنْ after حَيْثُ and إِذْ , “since”, and حَتَّى until, so much so that.

10. A clause introduced by أَنَّ or أَنْ may be considered the equivalent of a verbal noun, and so may be preceded by a preposition, e.g.

He ordered me to go	}	أَمَرَنِي بِأَنْ أَذْهَبَ
		أَمَرَنِي بِالذَّهَابِ
He told me that my	}	أَخْبَرَنِي بِأَنْ وَالِدِي قَدْ ذَهَبَ
father had gone		أَخْبَرَنِي بِذَهَابِ وَالِدِي

However, words that govern through prepositions frequently drop them before أَنْ and أَنَّ .

11. Other words or compounds of **إِنَّ** and **أَنَّ** that follow the same rules are **لَكِنَّ** (usually **وَلَكِنَّ**), “but”; **فَإِنَّ**, “for”; **لِأَنَّ**, “because”; **كَأَنَّ**, “as if”; **لَعَلَّ**, “perhaps”; **لَيْتَ**, “would that, if only”, e.g.

The mother came but her son did not **حَضَرَتِ الْأُمُّ وَلَكِنَّ ابْنَهَا لَمْ يَحْضُرْ**

Don't go away from here, for the director may ask about you **لَا تَذْهَبْ مِنْ هُنَا فَإِنَّ الْمَدِيرَ قَدْ يَسْأَلُ عَنْكَ**

He did not succeed because he did not study **لَمْ يَنْجَحْ لِأَنَّهُ لَمْ يَدْرُسْ**

He looked at me as though he did not know me **نَظَرَ إِلَيَّ كَأَنَّهُ لَا يَعْرِفُنِي**

(God) makes clear his marvels to men, that they may perhaps be mindful (Quran 2.221) **يَبَيِّنُ آيَاتِهِ لِلنَّاسِ لَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَذَكَّرُونَ**

If only (i.e. I wish) you would leave me **لَيْتَكَ تَتْرُكُنِي**

Sequence of Tenses

12. The tense of the verb in a subordinate clause is related to the time in which the action in the main clause takes place, e. g.

He looked at me as though he did not know me **نَظَرَ إِلَيَّ كَأَنَّهُ لَا يَعْرِفُنِي**

He said that he would go home every day at one o'clock **قَالَ إِنَّهُ يَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ فِي السَّاعَةِ الْأُولَى**

He said that he had seen me **قَالَ إِنَّهُ نَظَرَ نِي (أَوْ كَانَ نَظَرَ نِي)**

Note :

It is impossible to tell whether the second example means

“He said that he would go home” or “He said that he went home” (i.e. habitually). The insertion of *سَوْفَ* or *سَ* would make it clear if a future meaning were intended (قَالَ إِنَّهُ سَيَذْهَبُ) and the use of the perfect in the subordinate clause (قَالَ إِنَّهُ كَانَ يَذْهَبُ) would show a past meaning. But the ambiguity is often left unresolved in Arabic.

The لَا of Categorical Negation (لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ).

13. This *لَا* is usually followed immediately by an indefinite accusative but without tanwin and is generally to be translated “there is no/not...”, e.g.

There is no god but Allah

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

There is no man in the house who knows the truth

لَا رَجُلَ فِي الْبَيْتِ يَعْرِفُ الْحَقِيقَةَ

There is not the least doubt

لَا أَذْنَى شَكٍّ

As in the latter example *لَا* is not followed by an indefinite accusative the basic rule is broken. Although this construction may be found it should not be imitated.

14. Where such an accusative noun is qualified by an adjective, or where the *لَا* is repeated, various vowelings are possible, but it is safe to stick to the single fatha, e.g.

There is no important man in the house

لَا رَجُلَ كَبِيرَ (كَبِيرٌ) فِي الْبَيْتِ

There is neither a man nor a child in the house

لَا رَجُلَ وَلَا وَلَدَ (وَلَدٌ) فِي الْبَيْتِ

15. Where the **لَا** is not repeated, however, one of the following two possibilities must be used :

لَا رَجُلٌ وَوَلَدًا فِي الْبَيْتِ
وَوَلَدٌ

16. If the predicate comes in between the **لَا** and its noun the nominative reappears, and where there is more than one noun the **لَا** must be repeated, e.g.

لَا فِي الْبَيْتِ رَجُلٌ وَلَا وَلَدٌ

17. For a full treatment of the **لَا** of Categorical Negation see Wright's Arabic Grammar Vol. II pages 94-98.

EXERCISE 16:

The Sisters of إِنَّ ; Sequence of Tenses;

The لَا of Categorical Negation

إِنَّ الْحُضُورَ إِلَى الْمَدَارِسِ وَالْمَعَاهِدِ الْأَجْنَبِيَّةِ مَسْمُوحٌ بِهِ
 لِكُلِّ وَطَنِيَّ يَحْمِلُ وَرَقَةً مِنْ وَزِيرِ الْمَعَارِفِ — قَالَ نَاطِقُ
 بِاسْمِ وَزِيرِ الْخَارِجِيَّةِ إِنَّ الْحُكُومَةَ تَرْفُضُ اقْتِرَاحَاتِ الْمُنْدُوبِ
 السُّوْفِيَّةِ بِخُصُوصِ عَقْدِ مُؤْتَمَرِ لِرُؤَسَاءِ الدُّوَلِ فِي أَوَائِلِ
 الشَّهْرِ الْمُقْبِلِ — يَزْعُمُ الشَّيْخُ أَنَّ شُبَّانَ قَبِيلَتِهِ وَشُبَّانَ الْمَشِيخَةِ
 الْمَجَاوِرَةِ لِقَادِرُونَ عَلَى الدَّفَاعِ عَنْ مُقَاطَعَتِهِمْ — لَمْ يَسْبِقْ أَنْ
 سَمِعْتُ فِي حَيَاتِي مِثْلَ هَذِهِ الْأَخْبَارِ — إِنَّ الْبَيِّنَاتِ تَمْنَعُ تَقْسِيمَ
 الْأَرَاذِي وَذَلِكَ فِي مَصْلَحَةِ الْفَلَاحِينَ — لَعَلَّ الصَّنَاعَةَ الْخَفِيفَةَ
 تَنْجَحُ عَلَى نِطَاقٍ وَاسِعٍ فِي مِصْرَ — إِنِّي رَفَضْتُ التَّوَسُّطَ فِي
 مَشَاكِلِ مِنْ هَذَا النَّوعِ مَرَّاتٍ عَدِيدَةً وَمَعَ ذَلِكَ فَإِنَّهُ يَطْلُبُ
 مِنِّي بِاسْتِمْرَارٍ إِلَّا أَرُفُضَ طَلَبَهُ — لَيْتَكَ تَدْرُسُ كُلَّ الْكَلِمَاتِ
 الصَّعْبَةِ فِي هَذَا الْقِسْمِ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ — لَمْ تُنْقِلِ الْمَدَافِعُ الثَّقِيلَةَ
 وَرَاءَ الْمَرَائِزِ الْأَمَامِيَّةِ إِذْ إِنَّ نَقْلَهَا عَبْرَ النَّهْرِ خَطَرٌ جَدًّا —

بَلَّغْنِي أَنَّكَ كَتَبْتَ قِصَّةً عَنْ عَادَاتِ زُعَمَاءِ الْقَبَائِلِ فِي حَفَلَاتِ
 زَوَاجِهِمْ — لَمْ يَخْضُرْ أَبُوكَ إِلَى الْمُحَامِي وَلَكِنَّ أَخَاكَ الْأَكْبَرَ
 حَضَرَ نِيَابَةً عَنْهُ — اُنْظُرْ إِلَى ذَلِكَ التَّمَثَالِ الْجَمِيلِ فَإِنَّهُ يَظْهَرُ
 كَأَنَّهُ إِنْسَانٌ حَيٌّ — سَأَلَنِي السُّوَالُ وَكَأَنَّهُ لَا يَعْرِفُ شَيْئاً عَنْ
 الْمَسْأَلَةِ — لَا شَكَّ فِي أَنَّهُ مِنَ الثَّقِيلِ عَلَيَّ قَبُولُ آرَائِهِ غَيْرِ
 الْمَعْقُولَةِ — لَا فَايْدَةَ مِنَ الْإِسْتِمْرَارِ فِي الدَّعَايَةِ لِأَنَّ مَوْقِفَهُمْ
 مِنَ الْمُعَاهَدَةِ وَاضِحٌ تَمَامَ الْوُضُوحِ — قَالَ إِنَّهُ ذَهَبَ فِي
 الصَّبَاحِ مَرَّتَيْنِ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ — لَا صِنَاعَةَ ثَقِيلَةٍ فِي تِلْكَ الْبِلَادِ
 حَيْثُ إِنَّ أَرَاضِيهَا زِرَاعِيَّةٌ — لَا وَلَدَ وَلَا بَنَتَ يَخْضُرُ الْمَدْرَسَةَ
 فِي أَيَّامِ الصَّيْفِ .

It is understood here from official sources that with effect from the first part of next year there will be diplomatic representation between the Iraqi Republic and Kuwait. It was alleged in the Chamber of Deputies yesterday by the former President of the Republic that our propaganda in the Middle East is useless. Have you heard that the new school will be open during the whole of next summer? A government spokesman said yesterday that the movement of all military vehicles will be forbidden for a period of two weeks. The government's lawyers have requested that all taxes be paid at once, but up to now the companies are refusing this request. It appears from the statement that the transfer of military camps to the mountainous areas will be in the interest of the peasants. Perhaps the governor will be able to obtain new terms for neighbouring tribes. If only they would abandon their bad habits. She asked simple questions about the country as if she were a foreigner. He told them that the country's present economic

problems resulted from the lack of world demand for her products. His proposal was not accepted because (إِذْ إِنَّ) it was not reasonable. There is no doubt that the artificial moon will be of great advantage to man. There is no problem in this case unless something else (other) happens. No great man would act in such a way.

CHAPTER XVII

Relative Sentences; The Relative Pronoun

Relative Sentences

There are two types of relative sentence in Arabic, indefinite and definite. An example of the first is "I saw a house which Ahmad built"; in Arabic this would be "I saw a house Ahmad built it", رَأَيْتُ بَيْتًا بَنَاهُ أَحْمَدُ . In the second case, when "house" is definite, e.g. "I saw the house that Ahmad built", the sentence in Arabic becomes "I saw the house which Ahmad built it", رَأَيْتُ الْبَيْتَ الَّذِي بَنَاهُ أَحْمَدُ .

Note that in a relative clause that has both verb and subject, the former must precede the latter.

The Relative Pronoun

2.	Masculine	Feminine
Singular (all cases)	الَّذِي	الَّتِي
Dual nom.	الَّذَانِ	الَّتَانِ
gen. & acc.	الَّذَيْنِ	الَّتَيْنِ
Plural (all cases)	الَّذِينَ	الَّلَوَاتِي

The plural forms are, as usual, restricted to human beings.

Examples

Where is the box
in which you
left the money

أَيْنَ الصُّنْدُوقِ الَّذِي تَرَكْتَ فِيهِ الدَّرَاهِمَ

These are the men who looked for the boy هُوَ لَآءِ هُمُ الرِّجَالُ الَّذِينَ بَحَثُوا عَنِ الْوَلَدِ

A house the window of which was broken بَيْتٌ كُسِرَ شُبَّاكُهُ

The house the window of which was broken الْبَيْتُ الَّذِي كُسِرَ شُبَّاكُهُ

3. مَنْ , "he/him/who/whom" etc. (persons), which may be followed by a singular or plural verb, and مَا , "that which, what" etc. (things) which may be followed by a singular verb only, are used indefinitely, e.g.

She found someone who owned a yacht وَجَدَتْ مَنْ يَمْلِكُ يَخْتًا

Take such money as he has (lit. what is with him of money) — this is a very frequent usage خُذْ مَا عِنْدَهُ مِنَ الدَّرَاهِمِ

This is (part of) what I heard هَذَا مِمَّا (مِنْ مَا) سَمِعْتُهُ

4. مَا and مَنْ share the peculiarity that after them the pronoun in the relative clause may be omitted provided that the verb in this clause does not take a preposition, e.g.

This is what we wrote هَذَا مَا كَتَبْنَا (أَوْ كَتَبْنَاهُ)

These are the people I mentioned هُوَ لَآءِ مَنْ ذَكَرْتُ (أَوْ ذَكَرْتُهُمْ)

but

This is what I got هَذَا مَا حَصَلْتُ عَلَيْهِ

5. When "which" refers not to an individual word or words but to the whole concept contained in the preceding clause, it may be

translated by **الْأَمْرُ الَّذِي** or **مِمَّا**, e.g.

He was in a hurry, which made him run
كَانَ مُسْتَعْجِلًا الْأَمْرُ الَّذِي جَعَلَهُ يَرْكُضُ

He was delayed for a long time, which caused him to miss the prize
تَأَخَّرَ مُدَّةً طَوِيلَةً مِمَّا جَعَلَهُ يَخْسِرُ الْجَائِزَةَ

6. **مَا** with **كَانَ** or some other suitable verb may be placed in construct with a superlative to form expressions of the “as as possible” type, e.g.

He is as like as could be to a person from another world
هُوَ أَشْبَهُ مَا يَكُونُ بِشَخْصٍ مِنْ عَالَمٍ آخَرَ

He is going as quickly as possible
يَذْهَبُ بِأَسْرَعِ مَا يُمَكِّنُ

EXERCISE 17:

Relative Sentences; The Relative Pronoun

عَرَفْتُ جَمِيعَ الْأَشْخَاصِ الَّذِينَ قَدِمُوا مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ الْمَجَاوِرَةِ —
 مَا هِيَ الْقَوَائِنُ الَّتِي صَدَرَتْ عَنِ الْقِيَادَةِ الْعَامَّةِ لِلجَيْشِ ؟
 كَانَتْ الْمُدَّةُ الَّتِي تَمَّ فِيهَا صُنْعُ التَّمَثَالِ قَصِيرَةً جَدًّا — كَانَتْ
 الْأَضْطِرَابَاتُ الَّتِي نَتَجَتْ مِنَ الْمَظَاهِرَةِ سَبَبًا فِي وَضْعِ الْبِلَادِ
 تَحْتَ حُكْمِ عَسْكَرِيٍّ — لَا فَائِدَةَ مِنْ رَفْضِكُمْ دَفْعَ الضَّرِيَةِ
 عَنِ السَّيَّارَاتِ الَّتِي وَصَلَتْكُمْ أَخِيرًا — فِي يَبْرُوتَ بُنُوكُ كَبِيرَةٌ
 لَهَا شُهْرَةٌ وَاسِعَةٌ فِي أَكْبَرِ عَوَاصِمِ الْعَالَمِ — هَذَا مَا تَمَّ مِنْ
 أَعْمَالٍ فِي عَهْدِ الْحُكُومَةِ الْحَاضِرَةِ — عَرَضَ النُّوَابُ عَلَى
 الْمَجْلِسِ كُلِّ مَا عِنْدَهُمْ مِنْ اقْتِرَاحَاتٍ — هَلْ يَبْنِيكُمْ ، يَا
 إِخْوَانُ ، مَنْ لَا يَحْضُرُ الْإِحْتِفَالَ بِالْعِيدِ الْقَوْمِيِّ لِلْجُمْهُورِيَّتِنَا ؟
 لَا نَعْرِفُ شَيْئًا عَمَّا كُتِبَ فِي تَقْرِيرِهِ لِدَائِرَةِ الْبُولِيسِ — وَمِمَّا
 بَلَغَهُمْ أَنَّ تَحَرُّكَاتِ الْجَيْشِ بِالْقُرْبِ مِنَ الْحُدُودِ قَدْ بَدَأَتْ مُنْذُ
 شَهْرِ — وَصَلَتْنا دَعْوَتُكُمْ إِيَّانَا إِلَى حَفْلَةِ غَدٍ — حَمَلَتْ
 الصَّحَافَةُ فِي دَعَائِثِهَا عَلَيْنَا حَمْلَةً شَدِيدَةً لِيُظَنَّ إِيَّانَا ضِدَّ قَرَارَاتِ

مَجْلِسِ الْأَمْنِ — كَانَ حَلُّ الْمَشْكِلَةِ أَوْضَحَ مَا يَكُونُ — فَعَلَّ
أَكْثَرَ مَا يُمَكِّنُهُ .

The rules laid down by the General Headquarters for the selection of men for the naval forces have been issued. A man who did not mention his name to me asked me for work. They have offered us all the experience they have. This country has a great reputation of which its own (أَنْفُسُهُمْ) people are unaware. The case the lawyer is investigating has two main parts. With whom did the Government break (cut) off diplomatic relations? They broke off relations with the states that had recently attacked their policies. Many of the expressions that are mentioned in schoolbooks are not understood by all the pupils. This is something I cannot do. Do some deputies (are there among the deputies some who do) not attend all the meetings of the council? The two soldiers who were killed in defence of their homeland left many children. The infants whose mothers died used to be taken to special institutes. Would your friend refuse to eat this kind of food? No, get it ready for him at once. Where did you learn Arabic? A teacher taught me it in Shemlan. He did not give it to you because he had taken it with him. The house that the Druze initiate was living in was as near as could be to mine.

CHAPTER XVIII

More Adverbs: The Hal and Tamyiz

The hal (حَالٌ) and the tamyiz (تَمْيِيزٌ), mentioned briefly in Chapter IX, are among the most distinctively Arabic uses of the accusative case. The first example in Chapter IX, كَتَبَ لِي رَسْمِيًّا, is an example of a hal, because رَسْمِيًّا defines the way in which "he wrote to me". An example of a tamyiz is the sentence هُوَ أَكْثَرُ أَجْتِهَادًا مِنِّي, "he is more industrious than I am", because أَجْتِهَادًا specifies the quality in respect of which he is greater (see Chapter VIII, paragraph 13, and Chapter IX, paragraph 2).

The Hal.

2. The hal

- (a) must be an addition to an already complete sentence;
- (b) may be an adjective, participle, or noun;
- (c) must be indefinite.

More examples:

He went to America ذَهَبَ إِلَى أَمِيرِكَا فَقِيرًا وَرَجَعَ غَنِيًّا
poor and returned
rich

He entered the city riding دَخَلَ الْمَدِينَةَ رَاكِبًا حَصَانًا
on a horse

The professor taught him عَلَّمَهُ الْأُسْتَاذُ الدَّرْسَ كَلِمَةً كَلِمَةً
the lesson word by word

The Waw of the Hal.

3. A clause describing the state or hal of something mentioned in or connected with the preceding clause may be introduced by (وَإَوُ الْحَالِ) . This وَ is generally followed by a pronoun or noun in the nominative, by قَدْ or negative مَا with the perfect, or by لَمْ with the jussive, e. g.

He came into the room angry دَخَلَ الْغُرْفَةَ وَهُوَ غَضَبَانُ

I knew him when he كُنْتُ أَعْرِفُهُ وَقَدْ بَلَغَ نِهَآيَةَ سُلْطَانِهِ
had come to the
end of his power

They mounted before the رَكِبُوا وَمَا طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ
sun was up

The Verbal Hal.

4. The same effect is produced in a clause introduced by the imperfect with no وَ (known as a verbal hal), e. g.

He came into the room دَخَلَ الْغُرْفَةَ يَبْحَثُ عَنْ كِتَابِهِ
looking for his book

The Tamyiz.

5. The tamyiz
(a) must be a noun;
(b) must be indefinite,

More examples :

He is more strong-willed هُوَ أَقْوَى إِرَادَةً مِنْ أَخِيهِ
than his brother

He attended the meeting حَضَرَ الْإِجْتِمَاعَ نِيَابَةً عَنْ رَئِيسِهِ
on behalf of his chief

In his capacity as a minister بِصِفَتِهِ وَزِيْرًا

Adverbial use of Adjectives.

6. Adjectives or participles are sometimes used where adverbs would be used in English, e. g.

Intentionally difficult terms

شُرُوطٌ صَعْبَةٌ مَقْصُودَةٌ

Obviously good results

نَتَائِجٌ حَسَنَةٌ وَاضِحَةٌ

EXERCISE 18:

The Hal and Tamyiz

فِي الرَّبِيعِ يَنْزِلُ الْمَطَرُ خَفِيفاً — تَرَكْتُ وَطَنِي إِلَى أُرُوبَا طَلَباً
 لِلْعِلْمِ — بَعْدَ أَنْ سَافَرَ فِي اللَّيْلِ رَجَعَ مَرِيضاً — نَظَرَ إِلَى
 أُمِّهِ حَزِيناً وَقَالَ إِنَّهُ لَا يَرْجِعُ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ — رَجَعَ أَخِي سَعِيداً
 إِلَى الْبَيْتِ بَعْدَ غِيَابِ سَنَةٍ — كَتَبَ الْمُرَاسِلُ جِيداً عَنْ مَبْدَأِ
 الْأَشْتِرَاكِيةِ فِي ذَلِكَ الْبَلَدِ — مَا عَمِلَ فِي هَذِهِ الشَّرِكَةِ فَحَسَبُ
 بَلْ عَمِلَ فِي شَرَكَاتٍ كَثِيرَةٍ غَيْرِهَا — أَكَلَ تَفَاحَةً وَاحِدَةً فَقَطْ
 — أَنْتَ مَسْئُولٌ لَدَى الشَّرِكَةِ عَنْ أَكْلِ الْعُمَالِ فَقَطْ — مَا
 أَكَلَ شَيْئاً إِنَّمَا شَرِبَ الْقَهْوَةَ — دَخَلَ الْبَرْلَمَانَ وَكَانَ قَدْ تَرَكَ
 الْخِدْمَةَ الْعَسْكَرِيَّةَ — سَافَرَ إِلَى الْخَارِجِ وَهُوَ فِي حَالَةٍ حُزْنٍ
 شَدِيدٍ — عِنْدَمَا قَابَلْتُ الْوَزِيرَ الْجَدِيدَ وَجَدْتُهُ أَكْثَرَ تَفَاهُماً
 مِنْ الْوَزِيرِ الْقَدِيمِ — الْأَشْجَارُ فِي الرَّبِيعِ أَشَدُّ خُضْرَةً مِنْهَا
 فِي الْخَرِيفِ — السَّفَرُ فِي الصَّبَاحِ أَقْلُ صُعُوبَةً مِنْهُ فِي الْمَسَاءِ —
 كَمْ نَائِباً حَضَرَ تِلْكَ الْجُلُوسَةَ التَّارِيخِيَّةَ — كَمْ تَلْمِيزاً يَدْرُسُ
 اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي مَدْرَسَتِكُمْ؟

Her husband fell dead on the floor but she returned home safely.
 He went to the city in search of a job but returned sadly to his

own village. He went to bed tired. We visited him while he was sick. We watched them studying their lessons but we left before they had completed their work. Summer is hotter than autumn and spring is much less cold than winter. This expression is much more used than that. He is not so industrious as his brother and much weaker-willed. He is sometimes generous, even in his capacity as an official. Many of these examples are intentionally difficult.

CHAPTER XIX

Improper Annexation; Attraction

Improper Annexation.

A variant of the tamyiz construction (Chapter XVIII) is the so-called "improper annexation" (الإِضَافَةُ غَيْرُ الْحَقِيقِيَّةِ), where a compound adjective is formed from an adjective (or participle) apparently in construct with a defined noun (or verbal noun), e. g. كَثِيرُ الْمَالِ. The noun plays the part of the tamyiz accusative in "specifying" the application of the adjective. In this usage the rule of the construct state (Chapter III, paragraph 3) does not apply, and the adjective may have the definite article added to it, e. g.

The wealthy man

الرَّجُلُ الْكَثِيرُ الْمَالِ

From the wealthy girl

مِنَ الْبِنْتِ الْكَثِيرَةِ الْمَالِ

A kind-hearted man

رَجُلٌ طَيِّبُ الْقَلْبِ

The girl is broken-hearted

الْبِنْتُ مَكْسُورَةُ الْقَلْبِ

2. In order to form the comparative and superlative of this sort of compound adjective the procedure described in paragraph 12 of Chapter VIII is used, e. g.

The man is wealthier than I am

الرَّجُلُ أَكْثَرُ مَالًا مِنِّي

The wealthiest man

الرَّجُلُ الْأَكْثَرُ مَالًا

A wealthier man

رَجُلٌ أَكْثَرُ مَالًا

Attraction (النَّعْتُ السَّيْبِيُّ).

3. In some circumstances the ordinary rule that an adjective agrees with its noun in number, gender, case and definition is modified. In certain compound adjectival phrases the adjective is attracted into agreement in case and definition with a preceding noun that it does not qualify, though it remains in agreement with its own noun in gender, e.g.

I read a publication with a beautiful cover

قَرَأْتُ نَشْرَةَ جَمِيلًا غَلَا فِيهَا

From the two books previously mentioned

مِنْ الْكِتَابَيْنِ الْأُمْتَقَدِّمِ ذِكْرُهُمَا

4. In such constructions the adjective is always singular, except that it may be put in the plural if the following noun is a plural relating to human beings, e.g.

From the two publications
with beautiful covers

مِنَ النَّشْرَتَيْنِ الْجَمِيلِ غَلَا فَاهُمَا

From the publications with
beautiful covers

مِنَ النَّشْرَاتِ الْجَمِيلَةِ غِلَافَاتُهَا

To the man whose sons
are intelligent

لِلرَّجُلِ الذَّكِيِّ أَوْلَادُهُ
لِلرَّجُلِ الْأَذْكِيَاءِ أَوْلَادُهُ

In this kind of phrase the second part in effect forms a verbal sentence, with the adjective acting as verb: hence the noun in the second part is always nominative (as the subject of the sentence). Hence, also, if the adjective follows its noun instead of preceding it, it ceases to act like a verb, the sentence becoming a nominal one, and so it agrees with its noun according to the normal use, e.g.

I read a publication with
a beautiful cover

قَرَأْتُ نَشْرَةَ غِلَافٍ جَمِيلٍ

CHAPTER XIX

(Word List, Section 4)

EXERCISE 19:

Improper Annexation; Attraction

الْجَمَلُ صَغِيرُ الْعَيْنَيْنِ وَطَوِيلُ الْأَرْجُلِ — هُوَ لَا نِسَاءَ طَيِّبَاتُ
الْقَلْبِ وَخُصُوصًا أُمْرَأَةُ الْمُسْتَشَارِ — بَحَثُوا فِي الْمَسْأَلَةِ الْعَظِيمَةِ
الْأَهْمِيَّةِ بَحْثًا عَمِيقًا — زَارْتَنَا أُمْرَأَةٌ طَوِيلَةُ اللِّسَانِ فِي بَيْتِنَا
وَكَانَ كَلَامُهَا عَنِ الْجِيرَانِ — إِنَّ قَرَارَاتِ رَئِيسِ الْوُزَرَاءِ
صَعْبَةُ التَّنْفِيزِ فِي هَذِهِ الْأَوْقَاتِ — مَنَعَ الطَّبِيبُ الرَّجُلَ
الضَّعِيفَ الْجِسْمِ مِنْ طُلُوعِ الْجَبَلِ — وَصَلَ الْمُهَنْدِسُونَ الْكَثِيرُ
الْخَبِرَةَ إِلَى يَبْرُوتَ بِالطَّائِرَةِ مَسَاءً أَمْسٍ — جَلَسَتِ الْبَنَاتُ
الْجَمِيلَاتُ الْوَجْهَ فِي مَقْهَى قَرِيبٍ مِنْ بَابِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الرَّئِيسِيِّ —
وَجَّهَ الزَّعِيمُ كَلِمَةً إِلَى الْأَعْضَاءِ الْعَدِيمِي الْمَعْرِفَةِ بِمَبَادِيءِ
الْحِزْبِ — قَرَأَ وَلَدٌ ضَعِيفٌ نَظْرَهُ كِتَابًا صَعْبًا فَهَمُّهُ — كَانَتْ
الْبِنْتُ الْجَمِيلَةُ الْوَجْهَ مَكْسُورًا قَلْبُهَا — رَكِبَ حِصَانًا سَرِيعًا
جَرِيهً عَظِيمًا جِسْمُهُ قَوِيَّةً إِرَادَتُهُ جَمِيلًا شَكْلُهُ — وَقَعَ عَلَى
الْأَرْضِ بَعْدَ رَفْعِهِ الصُّنْدُوقَيْنِ الثَّقِيلَيْنِ حَمْلُهُمَا — قُتِلَ فِي الْحَمْلَةِ
الْجُنُودُ الصَّغَارُ أَوْلَادُهُمْ .

The rivers in Palestine have few fish in them. Important decisions are difficult to carry out (of execution) in these time. The deputies who are inexperienced in these problems are not fitted (غَيْرُ صَالِحٍ) to be members of a committee which is expected to deal with them. Some things are more difficult to understand than others. It is easy to travel in a country with good roads. In the far-horized desert a man feels smaller than he does in a heavily populated city. Most people are at least superficially good-hearted. The wealthiest people are not always the happiest. It was clear from the circumstances already mentioned that even the most industrious pupils would not succeed. It is essential to complete this important project.

CHAPTER XX

The Derived Forms of the Triliteral Verb

The system of derived or increased forms is one by which modifications to the First Form of a verb are accompanied by modifications in the meaning.

2. Dictionaries and grammars attach conventional numbers to these forms, up to XV, but only numbers II-VIII and X are in common use. The dictionary will indicate which forms are in use, and their meanings. No verbs occur in all the derived forms, and it is not permissible to invent forms that do not already exist for a particular verb.

THE PATTERNS OF THE DERIVED FORMS OF THE TRILITERAL VERBS

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Active		Verbal Noun	Partici- ple
				Jussive	Impe- rative		
II	فَعَلَ	يُفَعِّلُ	يُفَعِّلُ	يُفَعِّلُ	فَعِّلْ	تَفْعِيلٌ أَوْ تَفْعَلَةٌ	مُفَعِّلٌ
III	فَاعَلَ	يُفَاعِلُ	يُفَاعِلُ	يُفَاعِلُ	فَاعِلْ	فِعَالٌ أَوْ مُفَاعَلَةٌ	مُفَاعِلٌ
IV	أَفْعَلَ	يُفْعِلُ	يُفْعِلُ	يُفْعِلُ	أَفْعِلْ	إِفْعَالٌ	مُفْعِلٌ
V	تَفَعَّلَ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	تَفَعَّلْ	تَفَعُّلٌ	مُتَفَعِّلٌ
VI	تَفَاعَلَ	يَتَفَاعَلُ	يَتَفَاعَلُ	يَتَفَاعَلُ	تَفَاعَلْ	تَفَاعُلٌ	مُتَفَاعِلٌ

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Impe- rative	Verbal Noun	Partici- ple
VII	انْفَعَلَ	يَنْفَعِلُ	يَنْفَعِلُ	يَنْفَعِلُ	انْفَعِلْ	انْفِعَالٌ	مُنْفَعِلٌ
VIII	اِفْتَعَلَ	يَفْتَعِلُ	يَفْتَعِلُ	يَفْتَعِلُ	اِفْتَعِلْ	اِفْتِعَالٌ	مُفْتَعِلٌ
IX	اِفْعَلَّ	يَفْعَلُّ	يَفْعَلُّ	يَفْعَلُّ	اِفْعَلَّ	اِفْعِلَالٌ	مُفْعَلٌّ
X	اِسْتَفْعَلَ	يَسْتَفْعِلُ	يَسْتَفْعِلُ	يَسْتَفْعِلُ	اِسْتَفْعِلْ	اِسْتِفْعَالٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلٌ

Passive

Form	Perfect	Indicative	Participle
II	فُعِّلَ	يُفَعَّلُ	مُفَعَّلٌ
III	فُوِعِلَ	يُفَاعِلُ	مُفَاعِلٌ
IV	أُفْعِلَ	يُفْعَلُ	مُفْعَلٌ
V	تُفْعَلُ	يُتَفَعَّلُ	مُتَفَعَّلٌ
VI	تُفَوِّعَلُ	يُتَفَاعِلُ	مُتَفَاعِلٌ
VII	Wanting		
VIII	أُفْتَعِلَ	يُفْتَعِلُ	مُفْتَعِلٌ
IX	Wanting		
X	اُسْتُفْعِلَ	يُسْتَفْعَلُ	مُسْتَفْعَلٌ

Notes :

(a) The perfect, imperative and verbal noun of VII-X begin with hamzat-al-wasl bearing (ـِ) in the active and (ـُ) in the passive. The hamza of form IV is hamzat-al-qat'.

(b) IX follows the rules for doubled verbs (Chapter XXVII). Most verbs that exist in this form have meanings connected with colours or defects.

(c) Verbal nouns of increased forms generally take the sound feminine plural, and participles the sound plurals according to gender, observing the usual principle that inanimate objects are treated as feminine, and that the sound masculine plural is reserved for male persons.

(d) The subjunctive and jussive of the imperfect passive are formed regularly from the indicative.

3. In the derived forms the noun of time or place is formed on the pattern of the passive participle (c. f. Chapter IV, paragraph 11), e.g, مُتَّصِفٌ , "middle"; مُسْتَقْبَلٌ "future".

CHAPTER XXI

Derived Forms II, III and IV

Conjugation of Verb حَضَرَ Form II: حَضَّرَ , “to bring, fetch”.

<u>Active</u>					
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Impe- rative
3. m.s.	حَضَّرَ	يُحَضِّرُ	يُحَضِّرَ	يُحَضِّرْ	
3. f.s.	حَضَّرَتْ	تُحَضِّرُ	تُحَضِّرَ	تُحَضِّرْ	
2. m.s.	حَضَّرْتَ	تُحَضِّرُ	تُحَضِّرَ	تُحَضِّرْ	حَضِّرْ
2. f.s.	حَضَّرْتِ	تُحَضِّرِينَ	تُحَضِّرِي	تُحَضِّرِي	حَضِّرِي
1. s.	حَضَّرْتُ	أُحَضِّرُ	أُحَضِّرَ	أُحَضِّرْ	
		Participle	Verbal Noun		
		مُحَضِّرٌ	تَحْضِيرٌ		

<u>Passive</u>		
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m.s.	حُضِّرَ	يُحَضَّرُ
3. f.s.	حُضِّرَتْ	تُحَضَّرُ
2. m.s.	حُضِّرْتَ	تُحَضَّرُ

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
2. f.s.	حَضَّرْتُ	تُحَضِّرُ
1. s.	حَضَّرْتُ	أُحَضِّرُ

Participle

مُحَضِّرٌ

The most frequent meaning of a Second Form verb is causative, e.g. عَلَّمَ , “he knew”; عَلَّمَهُ , “he made him know, i.e. taught him”; قَدَّمَ , “he came forward”; قَدَّمَ , “he put forward, or offered”; عَرَفَ , “he knew”; عَرَفَ , “he informed”. But note كَذَبَ , “he lied”; كَذَّبَ , “he gave the lie (to) or disbelieved”.

It is sometimes intensive or emphatic, e.g. كَسَرَ , “to break”; كَسَّرَ , “to smash to pieces”; نَفَضَ , “to shake”; نَفَّضَ , “to shake violently”.

FORM III

Conjugation of Verb كَتَبَ Form III: كَاتَبَ , “to write to someone”.

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Impe- rative
3. m.s.	كَاتَبَ	يُكَاتِبُ	يُكَاتِبَ	يُكَاتِبْ	
3. f.s.	كَاتَبَتْ	تُكَاتِبُ	تُكَاتِبَ	تُكَاتِبْ	

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Impe-rative
2. m.s.	كَاتَبْتَ	تُكَاتِبُ	تُكَاتِبَ	تُكَاتِبْ	كَاتِبْ
2. f.s.	كَاتَبْتِ	تُكَاتِبِينَ	تُكَاتِبِي	تُكَاتِبِي	كَاتِبِي
1. s.	كَاتَبْتُ	أُكَاتِبُ	أُكَاتِبَ	أُكَاتِبْ	
		Participle	Verbal Noun		
		مُكَاتِبٌ	مُكَاتَبَةٌ		

Passive		
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m.s.	كُوتِبَ	يُكَاتَبُ
3. f.s.	كُوتِبَتْ	تُكَاتَبُ
2. m.s.	كُوتِبْتَ	تُكَاتَبُ
2. f.s.	كُوتِبْتِ	تُكَاتَبِينَ
1. s.	كُوتِبْتُ	أُكَاتَبُ
Participle		
مُكَاتَبٌ		

Form III usually takes a direct object, which is almost always a person.

(a) Where the First Form takes a preposition, the Third has the same meaning, but takes as a direct object what was formerly governed by the preposition, e.g.

كَاتَبَهُ = "he wrote to him", كَتَبَ إِلَيْهِ

هَاجَمَهُمْ = "he attacked them" , هَجَمَ عَلَيْهِمْ
خَاطَبَهُمْ = "he spoke to them" , خَطَبَ فِيهِمْ

A common reversal of this rule is the verb "to keep or preserve", حَفِظَ . The First Form usually takes a direct object and the Third Form usually takes the preposition عَلَى .

(b) Where the First Form indicates a quality or state, the Third indicates that one person displays that quality towards another, e.g.

لَطَفَ , "to be kind, gentle"; لَا طَفَ , "to treat kindly";
بَجَلَ , "to be graceful, proper"; جَاحِلَ , "to be polite or courteous to".

FORM IV

Conjugation of Verb أَخْرَجَ Form IV: "to bring or send out, expel"

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Impe-rative
3. m.s.	أَخْرَجَ	يُخْرِجُ	يُخْرِجَ	يُخْرِجْ	
3. f.s.	أَخْرَجَتْ	تُخْرِجُ	تُخْرِجَ	تُخْرِجْ	
2. m.s.	أَخْرَجْتَ	تُخْرِجُ	تُخْرِجَ	تُخْرِجْ	أَخْرِجْ
2. f.s.	أَخْرَجْتِ	تُخْرِجِينَ	تُخْرِجِي	تُخْرِجِي	أَخْرِجِي
1. s.	أَخْرَجْتُ	أُخْرِجُ	أُخْرِجَ	أُخْرِجْ	

Participle

Verbal Noun

مُخْرِجٌ

إِخْرَاجٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m.s.	أُخْرِجَ	يُخْرِجُ
3. f.s.	أُخْرِجَتْ	تُخْرِجُ
2. m.s.	أُخْرِجْتَ	تُخْرِجُ
2. f.s.	أُخْرِجْتِ	تُخْرِجِينَ
1. s.	أُخْرِجْتُ	أُخْرِجُ

Participle

مُخْرِجٌ

Like Form II, IV is frequently causative, e.g. جَلَسَ , “to sit”; أَجْلَسَ , “to seat (someone)”; صَعِدَ , “to go up”; أَصْعَدَ , “to cause to go up”. Only the dictionary will show whether a given root has II alone (e.g. نَظَّفَ , “to clean”), or IV alone (أَظْهَرَ , “to show”), or both more or less indifferently (أَوْقَفَ and وَقَّفَ , “to halt, arrest”), or both with distinct meanings (عَلَّمَ , “to teach”; أَعْلَمَ , “to inform”; صَلَحَ , “to repair”; أَصْلَحَ , “to reform”).

EXERCISES 20-21 :

Derived Forms II, III and IV

نَفَذَ الضَّبَّاطُ جَمِيعَ الْأَوَامِرِ الَّتِي أَصْدَرَهَا إِلَيْهِمُ الْحَاكِمُ
 الْعَسْكَرِيُّ — تُعَارِضُ بَعْضُ الْأَحْزَابِ إخراجَ الثُّجَّارِ
 الْأَجَانِبِ مِنَ الْبِلَادِ — قَوَانِينُ الْإِصْلَاحِ الْإِدَارِيِّ صَعْبَةٌ
 التَّنْفِيزِ فِي هَذِهِ الظُّرُوفِ — لَقَدْ أَعْجَبَنِي دِفَاعُ الْمُحَامِلِينَ عَنْ
 الْمَعْدِ — لَا تُفَكِّرُوا فِي الْمَسْأَلَةِ كَثِيرًا فَإِنَّهَا بَسِيطَةٌ جِدًّا —
 شَكَلَتْ جَمْعِيَّةٌ فِي شِمْلَانٍ بِاسْمِ جَمْعِيَّةِ أَصْدِقَاءِ الْحَيَوَانِ — إِنَّ
 الْفُرْصَةَ الْمَقْدَمَةَ لَكُمْ مُهِمَّةٌ جِدًّا فَلَا تَتْرُكُوهَا بِدُونِ الْحُصُولِ
 عَلَى فَوَائِدَ مِنْهَا — كَاتِبُونَا أُسْبُوعِيًّا وَأَخْبِرُونَا عَمَّا يَحْدُثُ
 عِنْدَكُمْ — تُحَافِظُ الْمَدَارِسُ الدَّاخِلِيَّةُ عَلَى صِحَّةِ طُلَّابِهَا مُحَافَظَةً
 شَدِيدَةً — إِنَّ شَعْبَ الْجُمْهُورِيَّةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ يُعَلِّقُ أَهْمِيَّةً كَبِيرَةً
 عَلَى هَذَا الْمَشْرُوعِ — لَقَدْ أَبْلَغْتُ الْقَائِدَ أَنَّ تَصْلِيحَ الْمَدَافِعِ
 فِي مَرَاكِزِهَا غَيْرُ مُمَكِّنٍ — سَأُحَاوِلُ أَنْ أُرْسِلَ لَكَ كُلَّ مَا
 طَلَبْتَ بِأَسْعَارٍ رَخِيصَةٍ — رَفَضَ الْمُوظَّفُونَ أَنْ يُنْفِذُوا الْقَانُونَ
 الْجَدِيدَ الَّذِي أَصْدَرَهُ الْبَرْلَمَانُ — سَأُبَاحِثُكَ فِي الْمَوْضُوعِ نَهَارَ
 غَدٍ أَمَّا الْيَوْمَ فَإِنَّهُ لَا يُمَكِّنُنِي أَنْ أُعَبِّرَ عَنْ آرَائِي بِكَلِمَاتٍ

قَلِيلَةً — أَضْرَبَ جَمِيعُ الْعَمَالِ فِي الْمَصَانِعِ الْحَرِيَّةِ لِأَنَّهُمْ لَا
يُعَامَلُونَ مُعَامَلَةً حَسَنَةً — هُوَ جَمْنَا فِي مَرَاكِزِنَا وَقَتْلَ عَدَدٍ كَبِيرٍ
مِنَّا — أَخْبَرِيهِ بِأَنِّي سَأَقَابِلُهُ فِي مَكْتَبِي بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ — بَعْدَ أَنْ
نَظَفَتِ الْحَادِمَةُ غُرْفَةَ الطَّعَامِ دَخَلَ الْأَطْفَالُ فَوَسَّخُوهَا — عِنْدَمَا
دَخَلْتُ عَلَى أَبِي فِي غُرْفَتِهِ كَانَ يَدْرُسُ مَسْأَلَةَ تَحْسِينِ شُؤُونِ
الْبَلَدِيَّةِ .

Do these deputies represent your provinces? A great number of lawyers went on strike against the teaching of law in the new institutions. What are the fruits that Lebanon exports? It has been noticed that production this year will be high. The oil fields in Kuwait produce a great deal of oil every day. The problem was not difficult for the engineer and so he was able to do all the repairs very easily. The Commander in Chief (الْقَائِدُ الْعَامُّ) ordered that the heavy guns should be sent to the frontiers. Think (m. pl.) of your own affairs and do not think of anything else. The municipal council thought highly of the Chief Engineer's proposals. The decisions were carried out as a result of his revelation of the facts. She expressed to me the opinion that England would improve her relations with the Arab countries and particularly with Lebanon and Egypt. Greet (f. s.) my brother and sister when you go to visit them. The leader of the opposition informed the Prime Minister that his party would help in preserving public security. The Minister of Trade declared that he intended to export all the oil produced this year to the markets of western Europe. After considering the matter for a long time, he appointed an engineer as chairman of the board.

CHAPTER XXII

Derived Forms V, VI, and VII

Conjugation of Verb ذَكَرَ Form V: تَذَكَّرَ , "to remember".

<u>Active</u>					
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Impe-rative
3. m.s.	تَذَكَّرَ	يَتَذَكَّرُ	يَتَذَكَّرَ	يَتَذَكَّرْ	
3. f.s.	تَذَكَّرَتْ	تَتَذَكَّرُ	تَتَذَكَّرَ	تَتَذَكَّرْ	
2. m.s.	تَذَكَّرْتَ	تَتَذَكَّرُ	تَتَذَكَّرَ	تَتَذَكَّرْ	تَذَكَّرْ
2. f.s.	تَذَكَّرْتِ	تَتَذَكَّرِينَ	تَتَذَكَّرِي	تَتَذَكَّرِي	تَذَكَّرِي
1. s.	تَذَكَّرْتُ	أَتَذَكَّرُ	أَتَذَكَّرَ	أَتَذَكَّرْ	
		Participle	Verbal Noun		
		مُتَذَكِّرٌ	تَذَكُّرٌ		

<u>Passive</u>		
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m.s.	تُذَكَّرُ	يُتَذَكَّرُ
3. f.s.	تُذَكَّرُ	تُتَذَكَّرُ
2. m.s.	تُذَكَّرْتَ	تُتَذَكَّرُ

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
2. f.s.	تَذَكَّرْتُ	تَذَكَّرِينَ
1. s.	تَذَكَّرْتُ	أَتَذَكَّرُ

Participle

مُتَذَكِّرٌ

Note:

The table of the Passive has been included for the sake of completeness. In practice Form V verbs are not much used in the passive except impersonally, e.g.

“It was remembered” تَذَكَّرَ

Forms V and VI are often reflexive, passive, or reciprocal in meaning but these ideas, particularly in V, are often not obvious, especially in the more commonly used verbs, e.g.

تَذَكَّرَ, “to remember”; تَعَلَّمَ, “to learn”. Other examples are تَفَرَّقَ, “to be dispersed, to disperse (intrans.)”; تَعَرَّضَ, “to be exposed”; تَقَدَّمَ, “to advance (intrans.)”; تَشَرَّفَ, “to be honoured”; تَشَعَّبَ, “to ramify, branch out”. Frequently the Fifth Form provides the intransitive equivalent of the Second Form, e.g.

تَطَوَّرَ, “to develop (trans.)”; طَوَّرَ; “to develop (intrans.)”, تَطَوَّرَ.

Form VI

Conjugation of Verb بَدَلَ Form VI: تَبَادَلَ, “to exchange with one another”.

Person	<u>Active</u>				
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Impe-rative
3. m.s.	تَبَادَلَ	يَتَبَادَلُ	يَتَبَادَلْ	يَتَبَادَلْ	
3. f.s.	تَبَادَلَتْ	تَتَبَادَلُ	تَتَبَادَلْ	تَتَبَادَلْ	
2. m.s.	تَبَادَلْتَ	تَتَبَادَلُ	تَتَبَادَلْ	تَتَبَادَلْ	تَبَادَلْ
2. f.s.	تَبَادَلْتِ	تَتَبَادَلِينَ	تَتَبَادَلِي	تَتَبَادَلِي	تَبَادَلِي
1. s.	تَبَادَلْتُ	أَتَبَادَلُ	أَتَبَادَلْ	أَتَبَادَلْ	
		Participle	Verbal Noun		
		مُتَبَادِلٌ	تَبَادُلٌ		

Person	<u>Passive</u>	
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m.s.	تُبُوْدِلُ	يُتَبَادَلُ
3. f.s.	تُبُوْدِلَتْ	تَتَبَادَلُ
2. m.s.	تُبُوْدِلْتَ	تَتَبَادَلُ
2. f.s.	تُبُوْدِلْتِ	تَتَبَادَلِينَ
1. s.	تُبُوْدِلْتُ	أَتَبَادَلُ

Participle

مُتَبَادَلٌ

The meaning is generally reciprocal, e.g. تَقَاتَلُوا , “they fought with each other”; تَبَاحَثُوا , “they discussed with each

other"; تَضَارَبُوا, "they beat each other"; تَبَدَّلَ الْتَارِ, "there was an exchange of fire". The idea of reciprocity is not always found, e.g. تَظَاهَرَ, "to pretend, demonstrate (politically)"; تَقَاعَدَ, "to retire (on pension)".

Another possible meaning for a Form VI verb is pretence, e.g. "to be ill", مَرَضَ; "to feign illness", تَمَارَضَ.

FORM VII

Conjugation of Verb هَزِمَ Form VII: اِنْهَزِمَ, "to be routed, defeated"

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Impe- rative
3. m.s.	اِنْهَزِمَ	يَنْهَزِمُ	يَنْهَزِمَ	يَنْهَزِمْ	
3. f.s.	اِنْهَزِمَتْ	تَنْهَزِمُ	تَنْهَزِمَ	تَنْهَزِمْ	
2. m.s.	اِنْهَزِمْتَ	تَنْهَزِمُ	تَنْهَزِمَ	تَنْهَزِمْ	اِنْهَزِمْ
2. f.s.	اِنْهَزِمْتِ	تَنْهَزِمِينَ	تَنْهَزِمِي	تَنْهَزِمِي	اِنْهَزِمِي
1. s.	اِنْهَزِمْتُ	اَنْهَزِمُ	اَنْهَزِمَ	اَنْهَزِمْ	
		Participle	Verbal Noun		
		مَنْهَزِمٌ	اِنْهَزَامٌ		

The passive of Form VII is not used.

The meaning is often the passive of the First Form, e.g. **انْقَسَمَ**, "to be devided"; **انْكَسَرَ**, "to be broken"; **انْصَرَفَ**, "to go away" (one of the meanings of **صَرَفَ** is "to divert", dissuade or dismiss").

The connexion with the First Form is not always obvious, e.g. **انْخَرَفَ**, "to deviate"; **انْدَفَعَ**, "to rush" (though also "to be pushed").

EXERCISE 22 :

Derived Forms V, VI, and VII

هَلْ تَمَكَّنْتَ مِنْ زِيَارَةِ بَرِيطَانِيَا عِنْدَمَا كُنْتَ فِي أوروْبَا هَذِهِ
السَّنَةِ ؟ - أَخْبَرْنَا مُرَاسِلَنَا السِّيَاسِيَّ فِي الْقَاهِرَةِ أَنَّ رَئِيسَ
الْجُمْهُورِيَّةِ السُّورِيَّةِ سَيَتَبَاثُ خِلَالَ الْأُسْبُوعِ الْقَادِمِ مَعَ
السُّلْطَاتِ الْمَسْئُولَةِ بِخُصُوصِ الْمُسَاعَدَاتِ الْمَالِيَّةِ الْمَطْلُوبَةِ
لِلجَيْشِ - مِنْ أَلَوَاجِبِ أَنْ تَكُونَ الْعَلَاَقَاتُ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَكُمْ
طَيِّبَةً ، فَلْنَحَاوِلْ أَنْ نَحْصُلَ عَلَى التَّفَاهُمِ التَّامِّ فِي كُلِّ الْمَسَائِلِ
الَّتِي تَتَعَلَّقُ بِمَصَالِحِنَا - يَتَبَيَّنُ مِنْ نَشْرَةِ الْأَخْبَارِ الرَّسْمِيَّةِ أَنَّ
الْمَوْقِفَ الْخَطِرَ فِي الْمَعْسَكَرَاتِ حَوْلَ الْعَاصِمَةِ تَحْسَنَ بَعْضَ
الشَّيْءِ - طَلَبَ مُدِيرُ مَعْهَدِ الْهَنْدَسَةِ مِنْ كُلِّ التَّلَامِيذِ أَنْ
يَتَعَاوَنُوا مَعَ الْإِدَارَةِ عَلَى مُوََاجَهَةِ الْمَشَاكِلِ الْمُتَنَوِّعَةِ الْخَاصَّةِ
بِمَوْقِفِهَا الْحَالِيِّ - تَسَامَتْ الْيَوْمَ مَكْتُوبًا مِنْ جِيرَانِنَا السَّابِقِينَ
السَّاكِنِينَ الْآنَ فِي إِنْكِلِتْرَا ، عَبَرُوا فِيهِ عَنْ تَعْجِبِهِمْ مِنْ عَدَمِ
تَقَدُّمِ الْإِنْكِلِيزِ فِي الدِّرَاسَاتِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ - كُنَّا دَائِمًا نَتَكَلَّمُ أَنَا
وَالضَّابِطُ عَنِ الْمَدَافِعِ الثَّقِيلَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ وَغَيْرِهَا مِنَ الشُّوُونِ

الْفَنِيَّةُ الْمُتَعَلِّقَةُ بِالْحَرْبِ — كَانُوا يَتَكَلَّمُونَ عَنِ الْمَسَائِلِ الَّتِي
سَبَقَ أَنْ ذَكَرْنَاهَا .

Were you not surprised when you received our invitation? Army H. Q. has undertaken to cooperate on a large scale with the police in the event of demonstrations in the capital. The Lebanon is trying to develop her trade with Europe but recent events there have complicated (Second Form of عَقَدَ) the problem. I have not been able to remember all your suggestions in regard to the reform of our technical schools. The two delegations have discussed with complete frankness all questions connected with the progress of the oil industry. He alleged that the policy of the Nationalist Party depended chiefly on the opinions of foreigners. I was not able to speak fluently (with ease) but we were able to understand each other. Lebanon is divided into several regions, the most important of which are the mountainous and the coastal ones. The key broke when the girl tried to open the door.

CHAPTER XXIII

Derived Forms VIII, IX and X

Conjugation of Verb عَبَّرَ Form VIII: اِعْتَبَرَ , “to consider”

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Imperative
3. m.s.	اِعْتَبَرَ	يَعْتَبِرُ	يَعْتَبِرَ	يَعْتَبِرْ	
3. f.s.	اِعْتَبَرَتْ	تَعْتَبِرُ	تَعْتَبِرَ	تَعْتَبِرْ	
2. m.s.	اِعْتَبَرْتَ	تَعْتَبِرُ	تَعْتَبِرَ	تَعْتَبِرْ	اِعْتَبِرْ
2. f.s.	اِعْتَبَرْتِ	تَعْتَبِرِينَ	تَعْتَبِرِي	تَعْتَبِرِي	اِعْتَبِرِي
1. s.	اِعْتَبَرْتُ	أَعْتَبِرُ	أَعْتَبِرَ	أَعْتَبِرْ	
	Participle		Verbal Noun		
	مُعْتَبِرٌ		اِعْتِبَارٌ		

Passive

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m.s.	أُعْتَبِرَ	يُعْتَبَرُ
3. f.s.	أُعْتَبِرَتْ	تُعْتَبَرُ
2. m.s.	أُعْتَبِرْتَ	تُعْتَبَرُ

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
2. f.s.	أُعْتَبِرْتُ	تُعْتَبِرُ
1. s.	أُعْتَبِرْتُ	أُعْتَبِرُ
Participle		
مُعْتَبِرٌ		

In certain cases the first radical and the characteristic **ت** of the Eighth Form interact:—

(a) if the first radical of the verb is **ت** the two coalesce, e.g.

اتَّبَعَ (root تَبَعَ), “to follow”.

(b) if the first radical is **ص**, **ض**, **ط**, or **ظ** the **ت**

becomes **ط**, e.g. اِصْطَنَعَ, “to manufacture”; اِضْطَرَبَ,

“to be disturbed, excited”. Where the first radical is **ط** the

two letters are written as one with shadda, e.g. اِطَّلَعَ (عَلَى)

“to become aware (of)”.

(c) if the first radical is **ز**, **د**, or **ذ** the **ت** becomes **د**,

e.g. اِزْدَحَمَ, “to crowd (intrans.)”. Where the first radical

is **د** or **ذ** the two letters are written as **د** with shadda, e.g.

اِدَّعَمَ, “to be supported”; اِدَّخَرَ, “to save up, store”

(root ذَخَرَ).

The meaning of the eighth Form is often either:

(a) reflexive: اجْتَمَعَ , “to gather together, assemble”;
 اشْتَغَلَ , “to busy oneself, work”; اغْتَسَلَ , “to wash (one-
 self)”;

or (b) passive: ارْتَبَطَ , “to be bound”; اُنْتَشَرَ , “to be spread”.

Conjugation of Verb صَفِرَ Form IX: اِصْفَرَ , “to become
 yellow (pale)”.

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m.s.	اِصْفَرَ	يَصْفَرُ	يَصْفَرَ	يَصْفَرَ	
3. m.du.	اِصْفَرَا	يَصْفَرَانِ	يَصْفَرَا	يَصْفَرَا	
3. m.pl.	اِصْفَرُوا	يَصْفَرُونَ	يَصْفَرُوا	يَصْفَرُوا	
3. f.pl.	اِصْفَرْنَ	يَصْفَرْنَ	يَصْفَرْنَ	يَصْفَرْنَ	
2. m.s.	اِصْفَرْتَ	تَصْفَرُ	تَصْفَر	تَصْفَر	اِصْفَرَ
2. m.pl.	اِصْفَرْتُمْ	تَصْفَرُونَ	تَصْفَرُوا	تَصْفَرُوا	اِصْفَرُوا
2. f.s.	اِصْفَرْتِ	تَصْفَرِينَ	تَصْفَرِي	تَصْفَرِي	اِصْفَرِي
2. f.pl.	اِصْفَرْتُنَّ	تَصْفَرْنَ	تَصْفَرْنَ	تَصْفَرْنَ	اِصْفَرْنَ
1. s.	اِصْفَرْتُ	أَصْفَرُ	أَصْفَر	أَصْفَر	

Participle

مُصْفَرٌ

Verbal Noun

اِصْفَارٌ

This form, being rarely encountered, is included here only for the sake of completeness. It is normally formed from those roots from which colour-or-defect. adjectives are derived, but is not in practice formed from all of these. One Ninth Form verb in use that is not formed from such a root is إِرْفَضَ, “to break up or dissolve”. The Ninth Form conjugation is that of a regular doubled verb (Chapter XXVII).

The Ninth Form verbal noun is often used with أَشَدُّ or أَكْثَرُ in forming the comparative, instead of the First Form verbal noun (see Chapter VIII paragraph 15), e.g. أَشَدُّ أَخْضَرَارًا or أَشَدُّ خُضْرَةً.

Conjugation of Verb خَدَمَ Form X: اسْتَعْدَمَ, “to use, employ”

<u>Active</u>					
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Impe-rative
3. m.s.	<u>اسْتَعْدَمَ</u>	<u>يَسْتَعْدِمُ</u>	<u>يَسْتَعْدِمَ</u>	<u>يَسْتَعْدِمِ</u>	
3. f.du.	<u>اسْتَعْدَمَتَا</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمَانِ</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمَا</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمَا</u>	
2. m.pl.	<u>اسْتَعْدَمْتُمْ</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمُونَ</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمُوا</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمُوا</u>	<u>اسْتَعْدِمُوا</u>
2. f.du.	<u>اسْتَعْدَمْتُمَا</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمَانِ</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمَا</u>	<u>تَسْتَعْدِمَا</u>	<u>اسْتَعْدِمَا</u>
1. pl.	<u>اسْتَعْدَمْنَا</u>	<u>نَسْتَعْدِمُ</u>	<u>نَسْتَعْدِمَ</u>	<u>نَسْتَعْدِمِ</u>	
		Participle	Verbal Noun		
		<u>مُسْتَعْدِمٌ</u>	<u>اسْتِعْدَامٌ</u>		

<u>Passive</u>		
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m. s.	أُسْتُخْدِمَ	يُسْتَخْدَمُ
3. f. du.	أُسْتُخْدِمَتَا	تُسْتَخْدَمَانِ
2. m. pl.	أُسْتُخْدِمْتُمْ	تُسْتَخْدَمُونَ
2. f. du.	أُسْتُخْدِمْتُمَا	تُسْتَخْدَمَانِ
1. pl.	أُسْتُخْدِمْنَا	نُسْتَخْدَمُ

Participle

مُسْتَخْدَمٌ

Amongst the meanings of the Tenth Form are :

(a) to take, seek or ask for what is meant by the first form,
e.g. اِسْتَرَاَحَ , “to take one’s ease, rest”; اِسْتَغْفَرَ , “to ask
pardon”; اِسْتَأْذَنَ , “to ask permission”;

(b) to attribute to something the quality shown by the First
Form, e.g. اِسْتَحْسَنَ , “to consider good, approve of”;
اِسْتَثْقَلَ , “to find heavy, think a bore”.

EXERCISE 23 :

Derived Forms VIII, IX and X

اِرْتَفَعَتْ اُسْعَارُ الْبَضَائِعِ فِي السُّوقِ بِصُورَةٍ سَرِيعَةٍ — يَشْتَمِلُ
 هَذَا الدَّرْسُ عَلَى كَلِمَاتٍ أَكْثَرُهَا مِنَ الْكَلِمَاتِ الَّتِي يَكُونُ
 الطُّلَابُ قَدْ دَرَسُوهَا — تَخْضَرُ اُورَاقُ الْأَشْجَارِ فِي الرَّبِيعِ
 وَتَصْفَرُ فِي الْخَرِيفِ — إِنَّ كَمِّيَّةَ الزَّيْتِ الَّتِي أُسْتَخْرِجَتْهَا
 الشَّرِكَةُ هَذِهِ السَّنَةَ أَقَلُّ مِنْهَا فِي الْعَامِ الْمَاضِي وَلَكِنَّهَا أَكْثَرُ
 قِيَمَةً — سَوْفَ يَسْتَقْبِلُ هَذَا الْمَرْكَزُ فِي الشَّهْرِ الْقَادِمِ عَدَدًا
 آخَرَ مِنَ الْعُلَمَاءِ لِتَعْلِيمِهِمْ اُسْتِخْدَامَ الْآلَاتِ الْفَنِّيَّةِ — هَلِ
 اُسْتَمْتِ الْإِعَانَةُ الْمَالِيَّةُ الَّتِي تَرَكَهَا لَكَ أَبُوكَ عِنْدَ الْمَحَاسِبِ؟ —
 اِسْتَقْبَلْنَا مُدِيرَ السِّجْنِ عِنْدَ الْبَابِ الرَّئِيسِيِّ وَقَالَ إِنَّهُ يَعْتَبِرُنَا
 ضِئُوفَهُ — إِنَّ اُنْظِمَةَ إِدَارَةِ الْقَنَاةِ تَمْنَعُ اُسْتِخْدَامَ سُفُنٍ تِجَارِيَّةٍ
 لِنَقْلِ الشَّحْنَاتِ الْعَسْكَرِيَّةِ — لَا تَعْتَمِدُوا عَلَيْنَا فِي تَنْفِيزِ
 اَلْزَامَاتِكُمْ لِأَنَّنَا غَيْرُ مُكَلِّفِينَ بِهَا — اُضْطَرَّتِ الْحُكُومَةُ أَنْ
 تُخَفِّضَ اَلضَّرَائِبَ عَلَى أَكْثَرِ اَلْحَاجَاتِ اَلضَّرُورِيَّةِ — اِنْتَفَعَ
 اَلْفَلَّاحُونَ كَثِيرًا مِنْ تَعْدِيلِ اُنْظِمَةِ قَانُونِ اَلْإِصْلَاحِ اَلزَّرَاعِيِّ —
 إِنَّ بَعْضَ اَلدُّوَلِ اَلْأَعْضَاءِ فِي هَيْئَةِ اَلْأُمَمِ اَلْمُتَّحِدَةِ لَا تَحْتَرِمُ

مِشَاقَهَا — كَانَ مِنْ بَيْنِ أَهْدَافِ حِزْبِ الشُّوَارِ الْهُجُومُ عَلَى
الْإِسْتِعْمَارِ وَإِخْرَاجُهُ مِنَ الْبِلَادِ ثُمَّ الْحُصُولُ عَلَى الْإِسْتِقْلَالِ
الْتَّامِّ — وَقَعَتْ أَضْطِرَابَاتٌ فِي الْمُنْطَقَةِ فِي الْمِيدَانَيْنِ السِّيَاسِيِّ
وَالْإِجْتِمَاعِيِّ — انْهَزَمَتِ الْجُيُوشُ فَأَمَرَهَا الْقَائِدُ الضَّعِيفُ
الْإِرَادَةَ بِتَرْكِ مَرَاكِزِهَا الْأَمَامِيَّةِ وَاتِّخَاذِ مَرَاكِزِ دِفَاعِيَّةٍ أُخْرَى .

The government of one of the countries taking part in the project will suggest the formation of a ministerial council to draw up a common policy. He expects the basis of commercial and economic relations between the eastern countries to improve. The acting minister received the leaders of the demonstration and said he would remember the demands they submitted to him. By this means the President of the Republic will be able to prevent those who cause disturbances from entering the country and thus he will maintain its security and independence. The idea had spread amongst some western nations that they had the same rights in the Middle East as the peoples of the area. His job requires him to move from one place to another at least once a month. The girl blushed when she heard the words of the taxi-driver. All the necessary measures have been taken to amend the law for agricultural reform. The technical advisers of the Ministry of Public Works have suggested a plan for the extraction of certain kinds of stone from the mountainous northern areas.

CHAPTER XXIV

Conditional Sentences

A conditional sentence consists of two parts: the condition (الشَّرْطُ) , and the answer (الجَوَابُ) or statement of what will happen if the condition is fulfilled.

2. Conditional sentences may be introduced by the particles **إِنْ** , **إِذَا** , or **لَوْ** , “if”.

3. **إِنْ** is followed by the perfect or jussive in both parts of the sentence, e. g.

If he says that, he is lying

إِنْ قَالَ ذَلِكَ كَذَبَ
إِنْ يَقُلْ ذَلِكَ يَكْذِبُ

(the perfect may occasionally be found in one part and the jussive in the other.)

4. **إِذَا** , which originally meant “when” but is now commonly used as a synonym for **إِنْ** , normally takes the perfect in both parts, e. g.

If (when) she comes I will go

إِذَا جَاءَتْ ذَهَبْتُ

5. **لَوْ** is used only for conditions the fulfilment of which is impossible or doubtful. It takes the perfect in both parts and the second part should be introduced by **لَ** , e.g.

If I had wings I would fly لَوْ كَانَ لِي جَنَاحَانِ لَطَرْتُ

If she went she would see them لَوْ ذَهَبَتْ لَرَأَتْهُمْ

If the condition is a nominal sentence it may begin with لَوْ أَنَّ ,
e. g.

If man could govern him- لَوْ أَنَّ الْإِنْسَانَ قَادِرٌ عَلَى نَفْسِهِ
self he would not need
any government لَمَّا أَحْتَاجَ إِلَى حُكُومَةٍ

6. The tense of a conditional sentence must be judged from the
context, as the verb will normally be in the perfect or the jussive.
The sentence إِنْ قَالَ ذَلِكَ كَذَبَ could mean

If he said that, he was lying,
If he says that, he is lying,
or If he says that, he will be lying.

However, the modern tendency is to use the perfect for past condi-
tions and the jussive for future, though the use in the answer of
سَوْفَ or سَ with an imperfect indicative tense is becoming
increasingly common for future conditions. In order to leave no
doubt that a past tense is intended the verb كَانَ can be used with
the perfect tense (and this is also better style), e.g.

If he said that, he was lying إِنْ كَانَ قَدْ قَالَ ذَلِكَ، كَذَبَ

If she had gone she would لَوْ كَانَتْ قَدْ ذَهَبَتْ لَرَأَتْهُمْ
have seen them

In order to resolve all ambiguity it may sometimes be necessary to
paraphrase or expand a sentence.

7. If the condition is introduced by إِنْ or إِذَا and the first

word of the answer is anything except a verb in the perfect or jussive, the answer must be introduced by **فَ**, e.g.

If he says that, he is a liar	إِنْ قَالَ ذَلِكَ فَهُوَ كَاذِبٌ
If he resists you, hit him	إِنْ يُقَاوِمَكَ فَأَضْرِبْهُ
If he refuses, what will you do?	إِنْ رَفَضَ فَمَاذَا تَفْعَلُ؟
If he told you that, he lied	إِذَا أَخْبَرَكَ بِذَلِكَ فَقَدْ كَذَبَ
If you want to go, there is nothing to prevent you	إِذَا أَرَدْتَ أَنْ تَذْهَبَ فَلَيْسَ هُنَاكَ مَا يَمْنَعُكَ (أَوْ فَلَا مَانِعَ لَكَ)
If he comes I shall not speak to him	إِنْ يَجِيءُ فَلَنْ أُخَاطِبَهُ إَوْ فَلَا أُخَاطِبُهُ

Note that though **لَيْسَ** has the form of a perfect verb it is technically incomplete (Chapter XXXIV) and so needs to be preceded by **فَ** in the second part of a conditional sentence.

8. Sentences in Arabic that begin with such indefinite words as "whoever", **مَنْ**; "whatever", **مَهْمَا**; "wherever", **حَيْثُمَا** or **أَيْنَمَا**; "however", **كَيْفَمَا** etc. are treated as conditional sentences, e.g.

He who hesitates is lost	مَنْ تَرَدَّدَ ضَاعَ
Wherever you go I will go with you	أَيْنَمَا تَذْهَبِي أُرَاقِقُكَ
Whatever the circumstances your conduct is inexcusable	مَهْمَا كَانَتْ الظُّرُوفُ فَتَصَرُّفُكُمْ لَا عُذْرَ لَهُ

9. Occasionally the condition may be implied in an imperative, e. g.

Seek and you shall find اُطْلُبُوا تَجِدُوا i. e. اِنْ تَطْلُبُوا تَجِدُوا

In such cases the second verb follows the normal rules and is in the jussive.

10. Where the two halves of a conditional sentence are reversed the normal rules are no longer binding. They are, however, usually followed in the condition, e. g.

We shall support you سَنُؤَيِّدُكُمْ مَهْمَا كَانَتْ سِيَاسَتُكُمْ
whatever your policy

11. Negative conditions normally take the jussive in the first part, but otherwise follow the normal rules, e. g.

If you don't stop I will hit you	}	اِنْ لَمْ تَقِفْ ضَرْبْتُكَ
		اِنْ لَمْ تَقِفْ اَضْرَبْتُكَ
		اِنْ لَمْ تَقِفْ فَسَاْضِرُّبُكَ

If you had not arrived I should
have killed myself لَوْ لَمْ تَصِلْ لَا تَتَحَرْتُ

Note that اِذَا مَا is normally used as the equivalent of اِذَا and should not therefore be used as a negative (c.f. Chapter XV, paragraph 3 «a»), e. g.

If we turn (go) to him he اِذَا مَا تَوَجَّهْنَا اِلَيْهِ سَاعَدَنَا
will help us

12. The following two constructions are also to be found in conditional clauses :

(a) اِلَّا meaning "if not", "otherwise", e. g.

Give me what I ask,
otherwise I shall resign

أَعْطِنِي مَا طَلَبْتُ، وَإِلَّا اسْتَقَلْتُ
(أَوْ وَإِلَّا فَإِنِّي سَأَسْتَقِيلُ)

(b) لَوْلَا meaning “but for”, followed by a noun in the nominative or a pronominal suffix, and then by an answer obeying the rules of لَوْ clauses, e. g.

But for the doctor's arrival
she would have died

لَوْلَا وُضُولُ الطَّيِّبِ لَمَاتْ

But for you I should have succeeded

لَوْلَاكَ لَنَجَحْتُ

EXERCISE 24:

Conditional Sentences

إِنَّ تَسْتَعِيلَ الْوَسَائِلَ الزَّرَاعِيَّةَ الْحَدِيثَةَ يُكَلِّفُكَ الْمَشْرُوعُ قَلِيلًا
 — إِنَّ اسْتَمَعَ الطُّلَّابُ إِلَى تَوْجِيهَاتِ اسْتَاذِهِمْ نَجَحُوا — إِنَّ
 كَانَتْ قَدْ تَرَكْتَ الْمَدْرَسَةَ فِيهِ غَلْطَانَةٌ — إِذَا أَسْرَعْتُمْ فَقَدْ
 تَنْظُرُونَ أَصْدِقَاءَكُمْ فِي الْمَحَطَّةِ قَبْلَ السَّفَرِ — اعْتَبِرُونِي صَدِيقًا
 اتَّعَاوَنَ مَعَكُمْ — مَنْ يَجْتَهِدُ يَنْجَحْ وَمَنْ لَمْ يَجْتَهِدْ فَهُوَ
 الْمَسْئُولُ عَنْ عَدَمِ نَجَاحِهِ — لَا خَوْفَ عَلَيْكَ فَحَيْثُمَا تَكُنْ
 تَضْمَنُ لِنَفْسِكَ مُسْتَقْبَلًا سَعِيدًا — مَهَا تَشْمَلُ هَذِهِ الْمُنْظَمَةُ
 مِنْ جَنْسِيَّاتٍ مُخْتَلِفَةٍ فَإِنَّ النِّظَامَ مَحْفُوظٌ فِيهَا — لَوْ عُدِّلَ
 الدُّشْتُورُ لَحَدَّثَتْ أَرْزَمَةٌ شَدِيدَةٌ فِي الْبِلَادِ — إِنْ حَضَرَ الْمُفْتَشُّ
 الْيَوْمَ فَمَاذَا يَفْعَلُ مُحَاسِبُ الدَّائِرَةِ؟ — لَوْ أَكْمَلَ دِرَاسَتَهُ لَمَا
 وَقَفَ أَيُّ حَجَرٍ عَثَرَةٍ فِي طَرِيقِ تَقَدُّمِهِ — أَيْنَمَا تَذْهَبْ فِي
 الشَّرْقِ الْأَوْسَطِ تُقَابِلُ خَرِيجِينَ مِنْ هَذَا الْمَعْهَدِ — سَنَسَافِرُ
 مَعَكُمْ مَهَا كَانَتْ الظُّرُوفُ — مَهَا يَكُنْ مِنْ أَمْرِ فَإِنَّ تَطْبِيقَ
 الْقَانُونِ عَلَى جَمِيعِ طَبَقَاتِ السَّكَّانِ ضَرُورِيٌّ جَدًّا — سَوْفَ
 تَعْتُرُونَ عَلَى الْأَثَارِ الْقَدِيمَةِ إِنْ فَتَشْتُمْ عَنْهَا بِالطَّائِرَةِ — إِذَا

مَا أَمْطَرَتِ الْيَوْمَ تَأَخَّرَتِ الطَّائِرَةُ سَاعَةً — لَوْ لَمْ يَحْضُرِ
الطَّيِّبُ فِي الْحَالِ لَمَاتَ الْمَرِيضُ .

If you study the Arabic language you will be able to understand the customs of the Arab peoples. If the enemy attacks our territory we shall seek the help of our neighbours. However quick the porters are, they will not be able to load the ship before noon. If the laws which the parliament recently issued are applied severely no one will contravene them. If the parliament refuses to cooperate with the present ministers what will be their policy? But for your help I should not have succeeded in the examination. Whenever you feel (that you are) tired, thirsty or hungry, wash yourself and then sit down for a while before you do anything else. Were it not for them, the rumours would have spread and the results would have been very bad. The inspector will take severe measures against the butchers if they do not reduce the price of meat. If Musa comes across an experienced driver let him bring him to me. Whatever the case may be, compulsory education will be one of the articles of the constitution. We shall go to meet him at the airport whatever his feelings towards us may be.

CHAPTER XXV

Exceptive Sentences

The particle **إِلَّا** is commonly used with a following noun to mean "except". Where the main sentence is negative, the case of the noun is determined by its function in the sentence, e.g.

There is no god but Allah

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

He only ate a little

لَمْ يَأْكُلْ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا

None of the ministers was
present except the Prime
Minister

لَمْ يَحْضُرْ مِنْ أَلْوَزَاءِ إِلَّا الرَّئِيسُ

Where, however, the main sentence is affirmative any exception to it should be put into the accusative, e. g.

All the ministers were pre-
sent except the Prime
Minister

حَاضَرَ كُلُّ أَلْوَزَاءِ إِلَّا الرَّئِيسَ

2. Other words for "except" are **غَيْرُ** or **سِوَى** (plus the genitive), **عَدَا** and **خَلَا** (plus the accusative or genitive), and **مَا عَدَا** and **مَا خَلَا** (plus the accusative), e. g.

All the ministers were pre-
sent except the Prime
Minister

حَاضَرَ جَمِيعُ أَلْوَزَاءِ غَيْرِ الرَّئِيسِ

None of the ministers
was present except
the Prime Minister

لَمْ يَحْضُرْ مِنْ أَلْوَزَاءِ غَيْرُ الرَّئِيسِ

Nobody attended except your brother لَمْ يَحْضُرْ سِوَى أَخِيكَ
He ate all the apples except two أَكَلَ كُلَّ التُّفَاحَاتِ مَا عَدَا تَفَاحَتَيْنِ

Note that the case of غَيْرُ is determined by the same rules as those that govern the case of a noun after إِلَّا (see also Chapter XII paragraph 8). All the other words given above are indeclinable.

3. إِنَّمَا , with a following sentence or phrase, means "only".

In a verbal sentence إِنَّمَا modifies the verb, e.g.

I only drank (i.e. all I did was drink) coffee إِنَّمَا شَرَبْتُ الْقَهْوَةَ

In a nominal sentence إِنَّمَا modifies the predicate, e.g.

He does not know Arabic: he is only clever at mathematics لَا يَعْرِفُ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ
إِنَّمَا هُوَ مُقْتَدِرٌ فِي الرِّيَاضِيَّاتِ

EXERCISE 25 :

Exceptive Sentences

مُخَالَفَةٌ ج مُخَالَفَاتُ contravention or misdemeanour (legal)
قَانُونُ السَّيْرِ traffic law حَسَنًا well and good

سَتَكُونُ جَمِيعُ مَوَاضِعِ الْإِمْتِحَانِ اخْتِيَارِيَّةً إِلَّا الْحِسَابَ —
لَا تَسْمَعُ الْمَحْكَمَةُ إِلَّا مُخَالَفَاتِ قَوَانِينِ السَّيْرِ — اسْتَأْمَرُوا
كُتُبَهُمْ كُلَّهَا إِلَّا كِتَابَيْنِ — لَا يَسْتَهْدِفُ لُبْنَانُ فِي سِيَاسَتِهِ إِلَّا
حُبَّ جِيرَانِهِ مِنَ الْبُلْدَانِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ — زُرِعَتْ كُلُّ الْأَرَاضِ
الْجَبَلِيَّةِ بِالْأَشْجَارِ غَيْرِ الْجَنُوبِيَّةِ مِنْهَا — مَا أُخْرِجَ مِنَ
الْاجْتِمَاعِ سِوَى أَخِيكَ — أَفْرَغَتْ كُلُّ السُّفُنِ مَا عَدَا سَفِينَةً
وَاحِدَةً — تَحْتَفِلُ الْمَفُوضِيَّاتُ الْأَجْنَبِيَّةُ بِأَعْيَادِ الْبِلَادِ الرَّسْمِيَّةِ
مَا خِلَا عِيدِ رَأْسِ السَّنَةِ — حَضَرَ الْجُلُوسَةَ جَمِيعُ الْمُنْدُوبِينَ
عَدَا مَنْدُوبَنَا — كُنْ فِي الْمَكْتَبِ غَدًا وَإِلَّا
وُظِّفْتُ سِوَاكَ — لَوْ لَا مَرَضُهُ لَمَا تَقَاعَدَ إِلَّا بَعْدَ سَنَتَيْنِ —
لَوْ لَاكَ لَا كَمَلْتُ كُلَّ وَاجِبَاتِي الْمَدْرَسِيَّةِ غَيْرَ دَرَسٍ وَاحِدٍ —
صِحَّتُهُ جَيِّدَةٌ، إِنَّمَا يَشْعُرُ بِبَرْدٍ فِي جِسْمِهِ مِنْ وَقْتٍ إِلَى آخَرَ —
السَّبَبُ الرَّئِيسِيُّ فِي عَدَمِ تَوْحِيدِ الْبِلَادِ إِنَّمَا هُوَ الْإِخْتِلَافَاتُ

بَيْنَ الْأَحْزَابِ — الْوَسِيلَةُ الْوَحِيدَةُ لِتَنْظِيمِ السَّيْرِ فِي بَيْرُوتَ
إِنَّمَا هِيَ مُحَافَظَةُ السُّوْاقِ عَلَى الْقَوَائِنِ — لَا كَلَامَ لِلنَّاسِ إِلَّا
عَنِ الْأَزْمَةِ الْحُكُومِيَّةِ .

I know nothing about the Arabs except some customs of the beduins who dwell in the desert. People are talking about nothing these days except the relations between Church and State. Nothing kills man in the desert except hunger and thirst. The port is open to ships at all times of the year except during the winter months. There is no place left except this seat. It is only to hospitals and clinics for the poor that the government gives financial assistance. Nothing but oil is extracted from the land of Kuwait. I understand the meaning of all the words in this book except those of the preface. The World Bank will only give assistance if the money is necessary in order to improve the economy of the country.

CHAPTER XXVI

Numbers

The following are the *Cardinal Numbers* :

	Forms used with the masculine	Forms used with the feminine	Declension	Construction
0	صِفْرٌ ٠	صِفْرٌ	Declinable	Noun used as an adjective or noun
1	وَاحِدٌ ١	وَاحِدَةٌ		
	أَحَدٌ	إِحْدَى	(indecl. إِحْدَى)	Used as noun only
2	إِثْنَانِ ٢	إِثْنَانِ	Declinable	Used as an adject- ive or noun
3	ثَلَاثَةٌ ٣	ثَلَاثٌ	»	Nouns used with a following genitive plural (but see also Notes (b) and (e) (ii))
4	أَرْبَعَةٌ ٤	أَرْبَعٌ	»	
5	خَمْسَةٌ ٥	خَمْسٌ	»	
6	سِتَّةٌ ٦	سِتٌّ	»	»
7	سَبْعَةٌ ٧	سَبْعٌ	»	»
8	ثَمَانِيَةٌ ٨	ثَمَانٍ	»	»
9	تِسْعَةٌ ٩	تِسْعٌ	»	»
10	عَشْرَةٌ ١٠	عَشْرٌ	»	»
11	أَحَدَ عَشَرَ ١١	إِحْدَى عَشَرَ	Indeclinable	used with a follow- ing acc. sing. (but see also Note (b))

	Forms used with the masculine	Forms used with the feminine	Declension	Construction
12	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ ١٢	إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ	Oblique cases	used with a follow- ing acc. sing. (but see also Note (b))
		إِثْنَتَيْنِ وَإِثْنَيْنِ		
13	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ ١٣	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ	Indeclinable	»
14	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ ١٤	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
15	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ ١٥	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
16	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ ١٦	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
17	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ ١٧	سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
18	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ ١٨	ثَمَانِيَ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
19	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ ١٩	تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	»	»

Forms used with mas-
culine and feminine

20	٢٠	عِشْرُونَ	Declinable as sound plurals	»
30	٣٠	ثَلَاثُونَ	»	»
40	٤٠	أَرْبَعُونَ	»	»
50	٥٠	خَمْسُونَ	»	»
60	٦٠	سِتُّونَ	»	»
70	٧٠	سَبْعُونَ	»	»
80	٨٠	ثَمَانُونَ	»	»
90	٩٠	تِسْعُونَ	»	»

Forms used with masculine and feminine		Declension	Construction
100	مِائَةٌ، مِئَةٌ ١٠٠	Declinable	Noun used with a following genitive singular (but see also Note (b))
200	(مِئُونَ، مِئَاتُ: plur.) ٢٠٠	»	
	مِئَتَانِ ٢٠٠	»	
300	ثَلَاثُ مِئَةٍ ٣٠٠	»	(see Note e (ii))
400	أَرْبَعُ مِئَةٍ ٤٠٠	»	»
etc.	etc.	»	»
1000	أَلْفٌ ١٠٠٠	»	Noun used with following genitive singular (but see Note h (ii))
	(آلَافٌ or أُلُوفٌ pl.)	»	
2000	أَلْفَانِ ٢٠٠٠	»	»
3000	ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ ٣٠٠٠	»	»
4000	أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ ٤٠٠٠	»	»
etc.	etc.	»	»
1,000,000	مِليُونٌ ١ ٠٠٠ ٠٠٠	»	Noun used with following genitive singular
6,000,000	سِتَّةُ مِلايِينَ ٦ ٠٠٠ ٠٠٠	»	»
etc.	etc.	»	»

Notes :

(a) After compound numbers the case of the following noun depends on the last figure of the compound, e.g.

106 books مِئَةٌ وَسِتَّةُ كُتُبٍ

170 ambassadors مِئَةٌ وَسَبْعُونَ سَفِيرًا

(b) All numbers may be used adjectivally after the noun they qualify, e.g.

Her three sons visited her

زَارَهَا أَوْلَادُهَا الثَّلَاثَةُ

His three daughters visited him

زَارَتْهُ بَنَاتُهُ الثَّلَاثُ

To four men

لِرِجَالٍ أَرْبَعَةٍ

For eleven men

لِرِجَالٍ أَحَدَ عَشَرَ

For the fourteen children

لِلْأَوْلَادِ الْأَرْبَعَةِ عَشَرَ

(c) *The number one :*

(i) The forms **وَاحِدٌ** and **وَاحِدَةٌ** may be used as nouns or as adjectives, e.g.

One plan

مَشْرُوعٌ وَاحِدٌ

Between one and the other

بَيْنَ الْوَاحِدِ وَالْآخَرِ
بَيْنَ الْوَاحِدَةِ وَالْآخَرَى

At one o'clock

فِي السَّاعَةِ الْوَاحِدَةِ

Count from one to twenty

عَدَّ مِنْ وَاحِدٍ إِلَى عِشْرِينَ

(ii) The forms **أَحَدٌ** and **إِحْدَى** are used only as nouns, never as adjectives. They, not **وَاحِدٌ** and **وَاحِدَةٌ**, must be used in construct, whether with a noun or pronoun, e.g.

One of the observers

أَحَدُ الْمُرَاقِبِينَ

One of them (f.)

إِحْدَاهُنَّ

(iii) **أَحَدٌ** is also used after a negative to denote "nobody", e.g.

I knew nobody

مَا عَرَفْتُ أَحَدًا

Nobody appeared

لَمْ يَظْهَرْ أَحَدٌ

Nobody is at home

لَا أَحَدٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ

The feminine form **إِحْدَى** cannot be used in this way.

(d) *Two* is ordinarily translated by the dual, e.g.

كِتَابَانِ, "two books". However, **اِثْنَانِ** is very occasionally used for emphasis, e.g.

I took only two books

أَخَذْتُ كِتَابَيْنِ اِثْنَيْنِ

اِثْنَانِ is most commonly found in compound numbers, e.g. in 12, 22, 32 etc., and in the word **يَوْمُ الْاِثْنَيْنِ**, "Monday".

(e) *The numbers from 3 to 10:*

(i) The gender of the numbers from 3 to 10 is determined by the gender of the noun in question in the singular not the plural, and the noun goes in the *genitive plural*, e.g.

Four animals

(from **حَيَوَانٌ**) **أَرْبَعَةُ حَيَوَانَاتٍ**

Five legations

(from **مَفْوِضِيَّةٌ**) **خَمْسُ مَفْوِضِيَّاتٍ**

The nine women

التَّسْعُ نِسَاءً
النِّسَاءُ التَّسْعُ (b) above

(ii) **مِئَةٌ** is an exception to the rule that the numbers from 3 to 10 are followed by the *genitive plural*: it is put in the *genitive singular*, e.g.

ثَلَاثُ مِئَةٍ 300

(iii) The plural of **عَشْرَاتٌ**, **عَشْرَةٌ**, is used idiomatically in the sense of the English “dozens”, e.g.

I have dozens of books **عِنْدِي عَشْرَاتٌ مِنَ الْكُتُبِ**

(f) *The numbers from 11 to 19 :*

(i) Both parts of the number are vowelless in the accusative without tanwin, and are indeclinable with the exception of 2 in the compound 12.

(ii) The number 10 in the compound agrees in gender with the noun, and the other part of the compound (the units digit) is subject to the rules for 1, 2 and 3 to 9 already set out. The following noun is in the *accusative singular*, e.g.

إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ سَاعَةً (all cases) — أَحَدَ عَشَرَ حِصَانًا (all cases)
 اثْنِي عَشَرَ مَكْتُوبًا (acc. & gen.) — اثْنَا عَشَرَ مَكْتُوبًا (nom.)
 اثْنَتِي عَشْرَةَ قَرْيَةً (acc. & gen.) — اثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ قَرْيَةً (nom.)
 السَّتْ عَشْرَةَ بِنْتًا (all cases) — ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ وَلَدًا (all cases)
 الثَّمَانِي عَشْرَةَ حَدِيقَةً — الثَّمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ مَوْضِعًا
 الْآسَاتِذَةُ الْأَرْبَعَةُ عَشَرَ فِي الْجُلُوسَاتِ الْخَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ
 كَتَبَ الْمَوَاضِيعَ التَّسْعَةَ عَشَرَ

(g) *The numbers from 20 to 99 :*

(i) The multiples of 10 are treated as sound masculine plurals.

(ii) The conjunction **و** is inserted between the units and tens. The units precede the tens, e.g.

321 ٣٢١ ثَلَاثُ مِئَةٍ وَوَاحِدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ
1966 ١٩٦٦ أَلْفٌ وَتِسْعُ مِئَةٍ وَسِتَّةٌ وَسِتُونَ

(iii) The noun is in the *accusative singular*, e.g.

وَاحِدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ رَجُلًا	—	أَحَدٌ	—	إِحْدَى وَثَلَاثُونَ بِنْتًا
إِثْنَتَانِ وَخَمْسُونَ شَجَرَةً	—			إِثْنَتَيْنِ وَأَرْبَعِينَ أُمًّا
ثَمَانٍ وَسِتُونَ حَقِيقَةً (nom.)	—			ثَمَانٍ وَسِتِّينَ حَقِيقَةً (gen.)
ثَمَانِيًا وَسِتِّينَ حَقِيقَةً (acc.)	—			الْحَقَائِقُ الثَّمَانِي وَالسَّتُونَ (nom.)
الْحَقَائِقُ الثَّمَانِي وَالسَّتِينَ (acc.)	—			الْحَقَائِقُ الثَّمَانِي وَالسَّتِينَ (gen.)
لِخَمْسٍ وَالْخَمْسِينَ وَلَايَةٍ صَغِيرَةٍ (gen.)	—			لِخَمْسٍ وَالْخَمْسِينَ وَلَايَةٍ صَغِيرَةٍ

(Note how adjectives are vowelled when they qualify nouns governed by numbers e.g. *صَغِيرَةٍ* in the last two examples above. When the number is indefinite, the adjective is indefinite and agrees with the *noun* in case; when the number is definite, the adjective is definite and agrees with the *number* in case. Likewise *مِنْ أَرْبَعِ عَشْرَةِ مَسْأَلَةٍ سَهْلَةٍ* and *(مِنْ) الْأَرْبَعِ عَشْرَةِ مَسْأَلَةٍ السَّهْلَةِ*)

(h) The numbers 100, 1000, 1000,000 :

(i) أَلْفٌ (pl. *أَلُوفٌ*) or مِئَةٌ (pl. *مِئَاتٌ*), أَلْفٌ (pl. *أَلُوفٌ*) or مِئَةٌ (pl. *مِئَاتٌ*) take the noun after them in the *genitive singular*, e.g.

100 trees

مِئَةُ شَجَرَةٍ

1000 women

أَلْفُ أَمْرَأَةٍ

One million soldiers

مِلْيُونُ جُنْدِيٍّ

(ii) In compound numbers they are treated as ordinary nouns subject to the rules in the preceding notes, e.g.

مِئَةٌ وَثَلَاثَةٌ 103 — مِئَةٌ وَاثْنَانِ 102 — مِئَةٌ وَوَاحِدٌ 101

ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ or ثَلَاثُ مِئَةٍ 300 — مِئَةٌ وَأَرْبَعَةٌ عَشَرَ 114

سَبْعُمِائَةٍ or سَبْعُ مِئَةٍ 700

خَمْسُمِائَةٍ كِتَابٍ وَكِتَابٌ 501 books

ثَمَانِي مِئَةٍ وَأَرْبَعُ عَشْرَةَ مَدْرَسَةً 814 schools

خِلَالَ السَّنَوَاتِ الثَّلَاثِمِائَةِ
وَالْإِثْنَتَيْ عَشْرَةَ الْأَخِيرَةِ
During the last 312 years

أَلْفُ لَيْلَةٍ وَلَيْلَةٍ 1001 nights

ثَمَانُونَ مِلْيُونَ دُولَارٍ 80 million dollars

الْمَلَايِينُ السَّتَّةُ عَشَرَ The 16 million

Note that the plural **آلَافٌ** is used when the number is stated and **أُلُوفٌ** with **مِنْ** when it is indefinite, e.g.

عَشْرَةُ آلَافِ رَجُلٍ Ten thousand men

أُلُوفٌ مِنَ الرِّجَالِ but Thousands of men

Note also that the hundreds from 300 to 900 are often written as one word.

2. The following are the *Ordinal Numbers*:

	Masculine	Feminine	Declen- sion	Const- ruction
1st	الأَوَّلُ	الأُولَى	Declin- able	Used as adjecti- ves with a follo- wing ge- nitive plural.
2nd	الثَّانِي	الثَّانِيَّةُ	»	»
3rd	الثَّالِثُ	الثَّالِثَةُ	»	»
6th	السَّادِسُ	السَّادِسَةُ	»	»
8th	الثَّامِنُ	الثَّامِنَةُ	»	»
to 10th	etc.	etc.	»	»
11th	الحَادِي عَشَرَ	الحَادِيَّةُ عَشْرَةَ	Indec- linable	»
12th	الثَّانِي عَشَرَ	الثَّانِيَّةُ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
13th	الثَّالِثَ عَشَرَ	الثَّالِثَةُ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
14th	الرَّابِعَ عَشَرَ	الرَّابِعَةُ عَشْرَةَ	»	»
to 19th	etc.	etc.	»	»
20th	العِشْرُونَ	العِشْرُونَ	Declin- able	»
21st	الحَادِي وَالْعِشْرُونَ	الحَادِيَّةُ وَالْعِشْرُونَ	»	»
	etc.	etc.	»	»
100th	المِئَةُ	المِئَةُ	»	»
101st	المِئَةُ وَالْوَاحِدُ	المِئَةُ وَالْوَاحِدَةُ	»	»
1000th	الأَلْفُ	الأَلْفُ	»	»
1001st	الأَلْفُ وَالْوَاحِدُ	الأَلْفُ وَالْوَاحِدَةُ	»	»

Notes :

(a) Although الْحَادِي and الْحَادِيَّة are indeclinable in "11th" and الثَّانِي and الثَّانِيَّة are indeclinable in 12th, they decline like الْقَاضِي when followed by وَ , e.g.

الْحَادِي وَالْخُمْسُونَ (nom.)	الْحَادِي وَالْخُمْسِينَ (acc.)
الثَّانِي وَالْأَرْبَعِينَ (gen.)	الثَّانِي وَالْأَرْبَعِينَ (acc.)
الْحَادِيَّة وَالْثَمَانُونَ (nom.)	الثَّانِيَّة وَالْثَمَانِينَ (acc.)
الثَّانِيَّة وَالْثَمَانِينَ (gen.)	

(b) Each figure in an ordinal number is definite with the exception of عَشْرَة or عَشَرَ in the ordinals from 11th until 19th, e.g.

The 3rd man	الرَّجُلُ الثَّلَاثُ
The 3rd woman	الْمَرْأَةُ الثَّلَاثَةُ
The 3rd of the men	ثَلَاثُ الرِّجَالِ
The 3rd of the women	ثَلَاثَةُ النِّسَاءِ
The 14th year	السَّنَةُ الرَّابِعَةَ عَشْرَةَ
The 46th plan (nom.)	الْمَشْرُوعُ السَّادِسُ وَالْأَرْبَعُونَ
The 100th law (acc.)	القَانُونُ الْمِئَةَ
The 104th (gen.)	الْمِئَةِ وَالرَّابِعِ أَوْ الرَّابِعِ بَعْدَ الْمِئَةِ
The 201st	الْأَوَّلَى بَعْدَ الْمِئَتَيْنِ - الْأَوَّلُ بَعْدَ الْمِئَتَيْنِ

The 1001st night اللَّيْلَةُ الْأُولَى بَعْدَ أَلْفٍ

The 3654th (m.) الثَّلَاثَةُ أَلْفٍ وَالسِّتِمِائَةِ وَالرَّابِعُ وَالْخَمْسُونَ

In the 1614th year فِي السَّنَةِ أَلْفٍ وَالسِّتِمِائَةِ وَالرَّابِعَةِ عَشْرَةَ

3. The following are the *fractions from a half to a tenth* :

		Singular	Plural
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	نِصْفٌ	أَنْصَافٌ
$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	ثُلُثٌ	أَثْلَاثٌ
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	رُبْعٌ	أَرْبَاعٌ
$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	خُمْسٌ	أَخْمَاسٌ
$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	سُدُسٌ	أَسْدَاسٌ
$\frac{1}{7}$	$\frac{1}{7}$	سَبْعٌ	أَسْبَاعٌ
$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	ثَمَنٌ	أَثْمَانٌ
$\frac{1}{9}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	تِسْعٌ	أَتْسَاعٌ
$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{1}{10}$	عُشْرٌ	أَعْشَارٌ

Examples of their use are as follows :

$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	ثُلُثَانِ
$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	سَبْعَةُ أَثْمَانٍ

$$\frac{3}{5} \quad \frac{2}{5} \quad \text{ثَلَاثَةُ أَخْمَاسٍ}$$

$$6\frac{3}{4} \text{ metres} \quad 6\frac{3}{4} \quad \text{سِتَّةٌ وَثَلَاثَةُ أَرْبَاعٍ مِثْرٍ}$$

If the denominator is greater than ten, the prepositions *عَلَى* or *مِنْ* are used, or, more stylistically, the phrase *جُزْءٌ مِنْ* (a part or fraction of), e. g.

$\frac{1}{19}$	$\frac{1}{19}$	وَاحِدٌ مِنْ (عَلَى) تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ جُزْءٌ مِنْ تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ
$\frac{2}{19}$	$\frac{2}{19}$	إِثْنَانِ مِنْ (عَلَى) تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ جُزْءَانِ مِنْ تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ
$\frac{3}{19}$	$\frac{3}{19}$	ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنْ (عَلَى) تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ ثَلَاثَةُ أَجْزَاءٍ مِنْ تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ
$\frac{13}{19}$	$\frac{13}{19}$	ثَلَاثَةُ عَشَرَ مِنْ (عَلَى) تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ ثَلَاثَةُ عَشَرَ جُزْءًا مِنْ تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ

4. It will be seen that figures, unlike words, are written from left to right.

5. The decimal point is normally written as a comma (فَاصِلَةٌ), e. g.

$$8.25 \quad ٨,٢٥ \quad \text{ثَمَانِيَةٌ فَاصِلَةٌ خَمْسَةُ وَعِشْرُونَ (مِنْ مِئَةٍ)}$$

As, however, a comma may also be used to divide thousands, and as a point is sometimes used for this purpose and as a decimal point, particular care is needed in the reading of numbers.

6. Percentages are expressed by the phrases **بِالْمِئَةِ** or **فِي الْمِئَةِ** (/), e.g.

4 % of the pupils

أَرْبَعَةُ بِالْمِئَةِ مِنَ الطُّلَابِ
٤٪ مِنَ الطُّلَابِ

7. Adjectives of the “double, two-fold” type are formed on the pattern **مُفَعَّلٌ**, e.g.

Triple, three-fold, a triangle

مُثَلَّثٌ

8. Adjectives of the “bilateral” type are formed on the pattern **فُعَالِيٌّ**, e.g.

Trilateral, trilateral, tripartite

ثَلَاثِيٌّ

9. Dates may be expressed in the following way :

At 3 o'clock on Sunday the
29th of December, 1963

فِي السَّاعَةِ الثَّلَاثَةِ يَوْمَ الْأَحَدِ فِي
التَّاسِعِ وَالْعِشْرِينَ مِنْ شَهْرِ
كَانُونِ الْأَوَّلِ سَنَةِ أَلْفٍ
وَتِسْعِمِائَةٍ وَثَلَاثٍ وَسِتِّينَ .

Note that the names of most of the months are diptotes.

10. Such phrases as “the 60's” may be expressed as follows :

The '60's

السَّنَوَاتُ السِّتِّيَّةُ
الْعَقْدُ السَّابِعُ (مِنْ الْقَرْنِ الْعِشْرِينَ)

11. بَضْعٌ, “a few, some” (“an unspecified number between 3 and 10”), follows the rules for numbers between 3 and 10, but it must precede its noun, e.g.

A few books

بَضْعَةٌ كُتُبٍ

A few hours

بَضْعُ سَاعَاتٍ

12. نَيْفٌ expresses an unspecified number over 10, e.g.

There are some thousand
(a thousand-odd) books in
my library

فِي مَكْتَبِي أَلْفٌ وَنَيْفٌ
(أَوْ نَيْفٌ كِتَابٍ)

EXERCISE 26:

Numbers

Shilling	شِلِينْ ج شِلِينَاتْ	Jerusalem	الْقُدْسُ
A. D.	بَعْدَ الْمِيلَادِ، ب. م.	B. C.	قَبْلَ الْمِيلَادِ، ق. م.
Piastre	قِرْشْ ج قِرُوشْ	Century	قَرْنْ ج قُرُونْ

اِقْتَصَرَ حَدِيثُهُ الْإِذَاعِيُّ عَلَى ثَلَاثِ نِقَاطٍ فَقَطْ — أَجْمَعَ جَمِيعُ
الْوُزَرَاءِ عَلَى إِرْسَالِ تِسْعَةِ مَنْدُوبِينَ لِلإِشْتِرَاكِ فِي الْإِجْتِمَاعَاتِ
التَّحْضِيرِيَّةِ لِمُؤْتَمَرِ مُلُوكِ وَرُؤَسَاءِ الْعَرَبِ — عَقَدَتْ حُكُومَتُنَا
خِلَالَ السَّنَوَاتِ الْخَمْسِ الْأَخِيرَةِ أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ مُعَاهَدَةً تِجَارِيَّةً
مَعَ حُكُومَاتِ أَعْضَاءِ السُّوقِ الْأُرُوبِيَّةِ السَّبْعَةِ — زَارَ
الْإِثْنَتَيْنِ وَالْخَمْسِينَ وَلَايَةَ الْأَمِيرِكِيَّةِ وَبَعْدَ رُجُوعِهِ تَنَقَّلَ فِي
سِتِّ عَشْرَةَ دَوْلَةً أُورُوبِيَّةً — كَانَ عَدَدُ الْوِلَايَاتِ فِي شِمَالِ
أَمِيرِكَا قَبْلَ خَمْسِ سَنَوَاتٍ ثَمَانِيًا وَأَرْبَعِينَ وَلَايَةً — يَتَقَاعَدُ
الْمُوظَّفُونَ فِي دَوَائِرِ الْحُكُومَةِ عِنْدَمَا يَبْلُغُونَ السِّتِينَ مِنْ
أَعْمَارِهِمْ — كَتَبْتُ مَقَالَتَيْنِ اثْنَتَيْنِ وَلَمْ أَكْتُبْ سِوَاهُمَا — تَمَكَّنَ
الْمُهَنْدِسُونَ مِنْ اسْتِخْرَاجِ النَّفْطِ مِنْ ثَلَاثِ آبَارٍ جَدِيدَةٍ خِلَالَ

الثَّمَانِيَّةَ عَشَرَ شَهْرًا الْمَاضِيَّةَ — كَمْ السَّاعَةُ الْآنَ ؟ السَّاعَةُ
 الْآنَ الثَّلَاثَةُ وَخَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ دَقِيقَةً — نُفْطِرُ عَادَةً فِي السَّاعَةِ
 السَّابِعَةِ وَالنِّصْفِ وَنَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ فِي الثَّامِنَةِ إِلَّا رُبْعًا —
 قَرَأْتُ كِتَابَ أَلْفِ لَيْلَةٍ وَلَيْلَةٍ ثَلَاثَ مَرَّاتٍ — يُقَدِّمُ الْبَنُوكُ
 الدُّوْلِي سَنَوِيًّا مَلَائِينَ مِنَ الدُّوْلَارَاتِ مُسَاعِدَةً لِشُعُوبِ
 إِفْرِيقِيَا وَآسِيَا — إِذَا كَانَتْ سِتَّةُ أَصْفَارٍ عَلَى يَمِينِ الْعَدَدِ
 «وَاحِدٍ» يَكُونُ اسْمُ الْعَدَدِ مِائِيًّا — فِي الطَّابِقِ الْأَوَّلِ مِنْ
 هَذَا الْبَيْتِ أَرْبَعَةُ أَعْمِدَةٍ — كَانَ أَوَّلُ يَوْمٍ مِنَ الْحَرْبِ الْعَالَمِيَّةِ
 الْأَوَّلَى الرَّابِعَ مِنْ شَهْرِ آبَ سَنَةِ أَلْفٍ وَتِسْعٍ مِئَةٍ وَأَرْبَعِ
 عَشْرَةَ — دَرَسْنَا الْفُصُولَ: الْأَوَّلَ وَالرَّابِعَ وَالْحَادِي عَشَرَ
 وَالْخَامِسَ وَالْعِشْرِينَ مِنْ كِتَابِ التَّارِيخِ الْعَامِّ — ثَلَاثَةُ أَخْمَاسِ
 الْجَنِينِ سِتُّونَ قَرُشًا — اِجْمَعُ $\frac{2}{3}$ وَ $\frac{5}{7}$ (اِثْنَيْنِ وَثَلَاثَةَ
 أَرْبَاعٍ وَخَمْسَةَ وَسَبْعَةَ أَعْشَارٍ).

I have been in America for the last three months. The coalition government includes six ministers from the four main parties in the country. That building is (ذَاتُ) eight storeys high. The eleven girls have eleven books. Twenty-one aircraft arrived today at the international airport. There were six Ministers and eighty-seven Deputies at the Council. There are ten word lists in this book each of which contains about three hundred words. The cost of the project that the engineer suggested will amount to thousands of pounds. Last year, the National Bank paid the Municipality of

Beirut the sum of L.L. 1,732,268. What was the name of the King who ruled France in the last part of the eighteenth century? The first day of the Second World War was the 3rd of September one thousand nine hundred and thirty nine. When he was seven years old (in the seventh year of his age) he ate seven apples in a single morning. The British Embassy opens at 8 a.m. The editor wrote several articles the most important of which was the sixth one. Do you know what happened in Jerusalem in the year 70 A.D.? Three fourths of a Jordanian pound are seventy-five piastres. Add $\frac{7}{16}$ and $\frac{6}{2}$ (write the fractions out in full). 16 % of the students in this boarding school do not like coffee.

CHAPTER XXVII

Doubled Verbs

Doubled verbs are those the second and third radicals of which are identical. In certain circumstances these radicals are run together.

Conjugation of Doubled Verbs

مَدَّ (-), "to stretch out"

Person	Perfect	Active			Impe- rative
		Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive and Jussive	Jussive (uncon- tracted)	
3. m. s.	مَدَّ	يَمُدُّ	يَمُدَّ	يَمُدُّ	
3. m. du.	مَدَّا	يَمُدَّانِ	يَمُدَّا	يَمُدَّا	
3. m. pl.	مَدُّوا	يَمُدُّونَ	يَمُدُّوا	يَمُدُّوا	
3. f. s.	مَدَّتْ	تَمُدُّ	تَمُدَّ	تَمُدُّ	
3. f. du.	مَدَّتَا	تَمُدَّانِ	تَمُدَّا	تَمُدَّا	
3. f. pl.	مَدَدْنَ	يَمُدُّنَ	يَمُدُّنَ	يَمُدُّنَ	
2. m. s.	مَدَدْتَ	تَمُدُّ	تَمُدَّ	تَمُدُّ	أَمُدُّ مَدَّ
2. m. du.	مَدَدْتُمَا	تَمُدَّانِ	تَمُدَّا	تَمُدَّا	مَدَّا
2. m. pl.	مَدَدْتُمْ	تَمُدُّونَ	تَمُدُّوا	تَمُدُّوا	مَدُّوا

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive and Jussive	Jussive (uncontracted)	Imperative
2. f. s.	مَدَدْتُ	تَمُدِّينَ	تَمُدِّي	تَمُدِّي	مُدِّي
2. f. du.	مَدَدْتُمَا	تَمُدَّانِ	تَمُدَّا	تَمُدَّا	مُدَّا
2. f. pl.	مَدَدْتُنَّ	تَمُدُّنَ	تَمُدُّنَ	تَمُدُّنَ	أَمُدُّنَ
1. s.	مَدَدْتُ	أَمُدُّ	أَمُدَّ	أَمُدُّ	
1. pl.	مَدَدْنَا	نَمُدُّ	نَمُدَّ	نَمُدُّ	

Participle

مَادٌّ

Verbal Noun

مَدٌّ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Subjunctive and Jussive
3. m. s.	مُدَّ	يُمَدُّ	يُمَدَّ
3. m. du.	مُدَّا	يُمَدَّانِ	يُمَدَّا
3. m. pl.	مُدُّوا	يُمَدُّونَ	يُمَدُّوا
3. f. s.	مُدَّتْ	تُمَدُّ	تُمَدَّ
3. f. du.	مُدَّتَا	تُمَدَّانِ	تُمَدَّا
3. f. pl.	مُدِدْنَ	يُمَدُّنَ	يُمَدُّنَ
2. m. s.	مَدِدْتُ	تُمَدُّ	تُمَدَّ

etc.

etc.

Participle

مَمْدُودٌ

Note that both jussive and imperative can have two forms.
The contracted forms are normally used in present-day Arabic.

Conjugation of Derived Forms of Doubled Verbs

Form	Active						Verbal Noun
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Impe-rative	Parti-ciple	
II	قَرَّرَ	يَقَرِّرُ	يُقَرِّرُ	يَقَرِّرْ	قَرِّرْ	مُقَرِّرٌ	تَقْرِيرٌ
	To decide						
III	ضَادَّ	يُضَادُّ	يُضَادُّ	يُضَادُّ	ضَادِّ	مُضَادٌّ	مُضَادَّةٌ
	To oppose						
IV	أَحَبَّ	يُحِبُّ	يُحِبُّ	يُحِبُّ	أَحِبَّ	مُحِبٌّ	not used
	To love						
V	تَرَدَّدَ	يَتَرَدَّدُ	يَتَرَدَّدُ	يَتَرَدَّدُ	تَرَدَّدْ	مُتَرَدِّدٌ	تَرَدُّدٌ
	To hesitate						
VI	تَضَادَّ	يَتَضَادُّ	يَتَضَادُّ	يَتَضَادُّ	تَضَادِّ	مُتَضَادِّدٌ	تَضَادُّدٌ
	To oppose each other						
VII	اِنْحَلَّ	يَنْحَلُّ	يَنْحَلُّ	يَنْحَلُّ	اِنْحَلِّلْ	مُنْحَلٌّ	اِنْحِلَالٌ
	To be solved						
VIII	اِضْطَرَّ	يَضْطَرُّ	يَضْطَرُّ	يَضْطَرُّ	اِضْطَرِّ	مُضْطَرِّدٌ	اِضْطِرَارٌ
	To compel						
X	اِسْتَفَزَّ	يَسْتَفِزُّ	يَسْتَفِزُّ	يَسْتَفِزُّ	اِسْتَفِزْ	مُسْتَفِزٌّ	اِسْتِفْزَاذٌ
	To excite, provoke						

Passive

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Participle
II	قُرِّرَ	يُقَرَّرُ	يُقَرَّرَ	يُقَرَّرْ	مُقَرَّرٌ
III	ضُوِّدَ	يُضَادُّ	يُضَادَّ	يُضَادَّ	مُضَادٌّ
IV	أُحِبَّ	يُحِبُّ	يُحِبَّ	يُحِبَّ	مُحِبٌّ
V	تُرَدَّدَ	يُتَرَدَّدُ	يُتَرَدَّدَ	يُتَرَدَّدْ	not used
VI	تُضَوِّدَ	يُتَضَادُّ	يُتَضَادَّ	يُتَضَادَّ	»
VII	Not used				
VIII	أُضْطَرَّ	يُضْطَرُّ	يُضْطَرَّ	يُضْطَرَّ	مُضْطَرٌّ
X	أُسْتَفْزَ	يُسْتَفْزُ	يُسْتَفْزَ	يُسْتَفْزَ	مُسْتَفْزٌ

Note :

(a) the difference between the subjunctive and jussive reappears in the Second and Fifth Forms, where the final consonant is not doubled.

(b) the passives of Forms V and VI have been included but these will not be met with except impersonally, e.g.

There was hesitation about taking
a decision

تُرَدَّدَ فِي اتِّخَاذِ قَرَارٍ

EXERCISE 27:

Doubled Verbs

تَدُلُّ الْأَنْبَاءُ مِنْ لَنْدَنَ عَلَى أَنَّ الْحُكُومَةَ الْبَرِيطَانِيَّةَ بَعْدَ أَنْ
تَمَّ الْمُفَاوَضَاتُ الْحَالِيَّةُ مَعَ الْوَفْدَيْنِ الْمِصْرِيِّ وَالْعِرَاقِيِّ تَكُونُ
قَدْ حَقَّقَتْ كُلَّ أَهْدَافِهَا فِي الشَّرْقِ الْأَوْسَطِ — هَلْ تَظُنُّ أَنَّهُ
يُمْكِنُ أَنْ نُحْلَ هَذِهِ الْمَشَاكِلَ الْمُخْتَلِفَةَ الْعَدِيدَةَ بِدُونِ تَحْقِيقِ
اِسْتِقْلَالِ الْوَطَنِ الْعَزِيزِ ؟ — فِي مِثْلِ هَذِهِ الْقَضَايَا تُحِبُّ بَعْضُ
الْجَرَائِدِ دَائِمًا أَنْ تَحْتَجَّ عَلَى سِيَاسَاتِ الدُّوَلِ الْغَرِبِيَّةِ — لَا تِهْمُهُ
الْعَدَالَةُ وَلَا حُبُّ الدِّيْمُقْرَاطِيَّةِ وَلَا الشُّعُورُ مَعَ أَصْحَابِهِ
الشُّيُوعِيِّينَ بَلْ لَا يَهْتَمُّ إِلَّا بِشَيْءٍ وَاحِدٍ وَهُوَ أَنْ يُضَرَّ بِقَدْرِ
مَا يُمْكِنُ بِمَصَالِحِ الْغَيْرِ — صَرَّحَ الْمُتَحَدِّثُ بِاسْمِ الْحُكُومَةِ
بِأَنَّهَا مُسْتَعِدَّةٌ لِمُقَاوَمَةِ كُلِّ التَّهْدِيدَاتِ — تَمُرُّ حَيَاةُ الْإِنْسَانِ
بِدَرَجَاتٍ كَثِيرَةٍ مِنَ السَّعَادَةِ، وَلَكِنْ أَهْمُّهَا بِدُونِ شَكٍّ الزَّوْاجُ،
فَإِنَّ الْإِنْسَانَ يُحَرِّرُ نَفْسَهُ بِتِلْكَ الْوَسِيلَةِ مِنْ سِجْنِ الْحُرِّيَّةِ
وَيَدْخُلُ سِجْنًا آخَرَ يُسَرُّ بِهِ بَعْضُ السُّجَنَاءِ كُلِّ الشُّرُورِ —
عَلَى قَدْرِ بِسَاطِكِ مَدِّ رِجْلَيْكَ — مَا رَدَدْتُ عَلَيْهِ عِنْدَمَا سَأَلَنِي

عَنْ أحوالِ الْبِلَادِ الْاِقْتِصَادِيَّةِ — ذَهَبَتْ فِتْيَاتٌ مِنْ مَكْتَبِ
السِّيَاحَةِ مَعَ السِّيَاحِ إِلَى الْمَنَاطِقِ التَّارِيخِيَّةِ وَدَلَّلْنَهُمْ عَلَيْهَا .

The Prime Minister took great interest in the plan that was put forward by the financial committee. The hotel managers were compelled to limit the hours of work in accordance with the Labour Code in case the servants protested to the Ministry of Social Affairs about their conditions of work. I was very pleased when I received your kind letter. A man's face usually indicates his origin. The Labour Party has decided to continue with (in) its present policy for a period of a year. My complaint will harm no one and it may benefit other guests in the future. We hesitated to accept the responsibility for the decision because we doubted its soundness. We like them for their readiness to carry out what they are asked to do. Count (m.s.) the books in the other room, which your brother did not (لم) count.

CHAPTER XXVIII

Conjugation of Hamzated Verbs

Rules for the writing of the "seat" of hamza will be found in Appendix D, but many will find it simpler just to learn the words.

First Radical Hamza

(أَسَرَ), "to capture, take prisoner"

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Impe- rative
3. m. s.	أَسَرَ	يَأْسِرُ	يَأْسِرَ	يَأْسِرْ	
3. m. du.	أَسَرَا	يَأْسِرَانِ	يَأْسِرَا	يَأْسِرَا	
3. m. pl.	أَسَرُوا	يَأْسِرُونَ	يَأْسِرُوا	يَأْسِرُوا	
3. f. s.	أَسَرَتْ	تَأْسِرُ	تَأْسِرَ	تَأْسِرْ	
3. f. du.	أَسَرَتَا	تَأْسِرَانِ	تَأْسِرَا	تَأْسِرَا	
3. f. pl.	أَسَرْنَ	يَأْسِرْنَ	يَأْسِرْنَ	يَأْسِرْنَ	
2. m. s.	أَسَرْتَ	تَأْسِرُ	تَأْسِرَ	تَأْسِرْ	إِيسِرْ
1. s.	أَسَرْتُ	أَسِرُ	أَسِرَ	أَسِرْ	
1. pl.	أَسَرْنَا	نَأْسِرُ	نَأْسِرَ	نَأْسِرْ	

Participle

Verbal Noun

آسِرٌ

أَسْرٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3.m.s.	أُسِرَ	يُوسَرُ
3.m.du.	أُسِرَا	يُوسِرَانِ
3.m.pl.	أُسِرُوا	يُوسِرُونَ
3.f.s.	أُسِرَتْ	تُوسَرُ
3.f.du.	أُسِرَتَا	تُوسِرَانِ
3.f.pl.	أُسِرْنَ	يُوسِرْنَ
2.m.s.	أُسِرْتَ	تُوسَرُ

Participle

مَأْسُورٌ

Conjugation of the Imperatives of

Person	أَخَذَ	أَكَلَ	أَمَرَ
2. m. s.	خُذْ	كُلْ	مُرْ
2. m. pl.	خُذُوا	كُلُوا	مُرُوا
2. f. s.	خُذِي	كُلِي	مُرِي
2. f. pl.	خُذْنَ	كُلْنَ	مُرْنَ

Second Radical Hamza

سَأَلَ, "to ask"

Person	Perfect	Active		
		Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	سَأَلَ	يَسْأَلُ	يَسْأَلْ	
3. f. s.	سَأَلَتْ	تَسْأَلُ	تَسْأَلْ	
2. m. s.	سَأَلْتَ	تَسْأَلُ	تَسْأَلْ	سَلْ أَوْ إِسْأَلْ
2. m. pl.	سَأَلْتُمْ	تَسْأَلُونَ	تَسْأَلُوا	سَلُوا أَوْ إِسْأَلُوا
2. f. s.	سَأَلْتَ	تَسْأَلِينَ	تَسْأَلِي	سَلِي أَوْ إِسْأَلِي
2. f. pl.	سَأَلْتُنَّ	تَسْأَلْنَ	تَسْأَلْنَ	سَلْنَ أَوْ إِسْأَلْنَ
1. s.	سَأَلْتُ	أَسْأَلُ	أَسْأَلْ	
1. pl.	سَأَلْنَا	نَسْأَلُ	نَسْأَلْ	

Participle

سَائِلٌ

Verbal Noun

سُؤَالٌ

Person	Passive	
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m. s.	سُئِلَ	يُسْأَلُ
3. f. s.	سُئِلَتْ	تُسْأَلُ
2. m. s.	سُئِلْتَ	تُسْأَلُ
2. m. pl.	سُئِلْتُمْ	تُسْأَلُونَ

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
2. f. s.	سُئِلَتْ	تُسَالِينَ
2. f. pl.	سُئِلْتُنَّ	تُسَالْنَ
1. s.	سُئِلْتُ	أَسْأَلُ
1. pl.	سُئِلْنَا	نُسَالُ

Participle

مَسْئُولٌ

Note : سَأَلَ has alternative jussives and imperatives :

سَلْ or اِسْأَلْ ; يَسَلْ or يَسْأَلْ

Third Radical Hamza

قَرَأَ , “to read”

Person	Perfect	Active		Impe- rative
		Impf. Indic.	Jussive	
3. m. s.	قَرَأَ	يَقْرَأُ	يَقْرَأْ	
3. m. du.	قَرَأَا	يَقْرَآ	يَقْرَآ	
3. m. pl.	قَرَأُوا	يَقْرَأُوا	يَقْرَأُوا	
3. f. s.	قَرَأَتْ	تَقْرَأُ	تَقْرَأْ	
3. f. du.	قَرَأَتَا	تَقْرَآ	تَقْرَآ	
3. f. pl.	قَرَأْنَ	يَقْرَأْنَ	يَقْرَأْنَ	

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Impe- rative
2. m. s.	قَرَأْتَ	تَقْرَأُ	تَقْرَأْ	اقْرَأْ
2. m. du.	قَرَأْتُمَا	تَقْرَآنِ	تَقْرَآ	اقْرَآ
2. m. pl.	قَرَأْتُمْ	تَقْرَآوْنَ	تَقْرَآوْا	اقْرَآوْا
2. f. s.	قَرَأْتَ	تَقْرَأِينَ	تَقْرَإِي	اقْرَإِي
2. f. du.	قَرَأْتُمَا	تَقْرَآنِ	تَقْرَآ	اقْرَآ
2. f. pl.	قَرَأْتُنَّ	تَقْرَآنَ	تَقْرَآنَ	اقْرَآنَ
1. s.	قَرَأْتُ	أَقْرَأُ	أَقْرَأْ	
1. pl.	قَرَأْنَا	نَقْرَأُ	نَقْرَأْ	

Participle

قَارِئٌ

Verbal Noun

قِرَاءَةٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m. s.	قُرِئَ	يُقْرَأُ

Participle

مَقْرُوءٌ

Derived Forms of the Hamzated Verbs

First Radical Hamza

Active

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Impe- rative	Verbal Noun	Parti- ciple
II	أَثَرٌ	يُؤَثِّرُ	أَثِّرْ	تَأْثِيرٌ	مُؤَثِّرٌ
	To affect				
III	آخَذَ	يُؤَاخِذُ	آخِذْ	مُؤَاخَذَةٌ	مُؤَاخِذٌ
	To blame				
IV	آمَنَ بـ	يُؤْمِنُ	آمِنْ	إِيمَانٌ	مُؤْمِنٌ
	To believe				
V	تَأَكَّدَ	يَتَأَكَّدُ	تَأَكَّدْ	تَأَكُّدٌ	مُتَأَكِّدٌ
	To be convinced				
VI	تَأَلَّفَ	يَتَأَلَّفُ	تَأَلَّفْ	تَأَلُّفٌ	مُتَأَلِّفٌ
	To be attuned to (each other)				
VII	No common verbs of this Form exist				
VIII	إِيتَلَفَ	يَأْتَلِفُ	إِيتَلَفْ	إِيتِلَافٌ	مُؤْتَلِفٌ
	(إِئْتَلَفَ)		(إِئْتَلَفْ)	(إِئْتِلَافٌ)	
	To be united (c.f. App. D para. 3)				
VIII	اِتَّخَذَ	يَتَّخِذُ	اِتَّخِذْ	اِتِّخَاذٌ	مُتَّخِذٌ
	To adopt				
X	اِسْتَأْجَرَ	يَسْتَأْجِرُ	اِسْتَأْجِرْ	اِسْتِئْجَارٌ	مُسْتَأْجِرٌ
	To (take on) rent				

Passive

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Parti- ciple
II	أُثِّرَ	يُثَّرُ	مُؤَثَّرٌ
III	أُؤْخِذَ	يُؤْخَذُ	مُؤْخَذٌ
IV	أُؤْمِنَ	يُؤْمَنُ	مُؤْمَنٌ
V	أُؤَبِّطَ	يُؤَبَّطُ	مُؤَبَّطٌ

To be carried under the arm

VI No common verbs of this Form exist

VIII	أُؤْتَمَنَ	يُؤْتَمَنُ	مُؤْتَمَنٌ
------	------------	------------	------------

To be trusted

VIII	أُؤْتَخَذَ	يُؤْتَخَذُ	مُؤْتَخَذٌ
------	------------	------------	------------

X	أُؤَسْتَوْجَرُ	يُؤَسْتَأْجَرُ	مُؤَسْتَأْجَرٌ
---	----------------	----------------	----------------

Note : The Eighth Form of أَخَذَ is irregular, being written اِئْتَخَذَ .

Derived Forms of the Hamzated Verbs

Second Radical Hamza

Active

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Impe- rative	Verbal Noun	Parti- ciple
II	رَأَسَ	يُرَئِسُ	رَئِسْ	تَرْئِيسٌ	مُرَئِسٌ
	To appoint as leader				
III	سَأَلَ	يُسْأَلُ	سَأِلْ	مُسَاءَلَةٌ	مُسْأَلٌ
	To question				

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Impe- rative	Verbal Noun	Parti- ciple
IV	أَكْبَبُ	يُكَبِّبُ	اَكْبِبْ	اِكْبَابُ	مُكَبِّبٌ
	To distress				
V	تَرَأَّسَ	يَتَرَأَّسُ	تَرَأَّسْ	تَرَوُّسٌ	مُتَرَأِّسٌ
	To be head of				
VI	تَفَاءَلَ	يَتَفَاءَلُ	تَفَاءَلْ	تَفَاوُلٌ	مُتَفَائِلٌ
	To be optimistic				
VIII	اِلْتَأَمَ	يَلْتَمِمْ	اِلْتَمِمْ	اِلْتِمَامٌ	مُلْتَمِمْ
	To be convened				
X	اِسْتَرَأَفَ	يَسْتَرِئِفُ	اِسْتَرِئِفْ	اِسْتِرَافٌ	مُسْتَرِئِفٌ
	To ask to be merciful				

Passive

Form	Perfect	Imperfect	Participle
II	رُئِسَ	يُرَاسُ	مُرَاسٌ
III	سُوئِلَ	يُسَاءَلُ	مُسَاءَلٌ
IV V, VI VII VIII X	No common examples to be found. If required they would be formed regularly.		

Derived Forms of the Hamzated Verbs

Third Radical Hamza

Form	Perfect	Active			
		Impf. Indic.	Impe- rative	Verbal Noun	Parti- ciple
II	نَبَأَ	يُنَبِّئُ	نَبِّئْ	نَبْيَةٌ	مُنَبِّئٌ
	To inform				

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Imper- ative	Verbal Noun	Parti- ciple
III	كَافَأَ	يُكَافِي	كَافِ	مُكَافَاةٌ	مُكَافٍ
	To compensate				
IV	أَنْشَأَ	يُنْشِئُ	أَنْشِ	إِنْشَاءٌ	مُنْشِئٌ
	To construct				
V	نَبَأَ	يَنْبَأُ	تَبَأْ	تَنْبُؤٌ	مُتَنْبِئٌ
	To forecast				
VI	تَبَاطَأَ	يَتَبَاطَأُ	تَبَاطْ	تَبَاطُؤٌ	مُتَبَاطِئٌ
	To be slow				
VII	انْكَفَأَ	يَنْكَفِي	انْكَفِ	انْكَفَاءٌ	مُنْكَفٍ
	To be overturned				
VIII	ابْتَدَأَ	يَبْتَدِئُ	ابْتَدِ	ابْتِدَاءٌ	مُبْتَدِئٌ
	To begin				
X	اسْتَنْبَأَ	يَسْتَنْبِئُ	اسْتَنْبِ	اسْتِنْبَاءٌ	مُسْتَنْبِئٌ
	To ask for news				

Note : that when the final radical is hamza the verbal noun of the Second Form is of the pattern تَفْعِيلٌ not تَفْعِلَةٌ .

Passive

Form	Perfect	Imperfect	Participle
II	نُبِئَ	يُنْبَأُ	مُنْبَأٌ
III	كُوِفِيَ	يُكَافَأُ	مُكَافَأٌ
IV	أُنْشِئَ	يُنْشَأُ	مُنْشَأٌ

Form	Perfect	Imperfect	Participle
V	تَنْبَىٰ	يَتَنَبَّى	مُتَنَبِّ
VI	تَبْوَطِي	يَتَبَاطِ	(not used)
VIII	أَبْتَدِي	يَبْتَدِ	مُبتَدٍ
X	أَسْتَنْبِي	يُسْتَنْبِ	مُسْتَنْبٍ

EXERCISE 28:

Hamzated Verbs

إِسْتَأْنَفَ to resume

كُلُّ وَأَشْرَبَ بِحُرِّيَّةٍ فَإِنَّ الْمَأْكُولَاتِ وَالْمَشْرُوبَاتِ
 كُلَّهَا عَلَى حَسَابِ الشَّرِكَةِ - أَلَا يُمَكِّنُ تَأْجِيلُ
 مُؤْتَمَرِنَا اُحْتِجَاجًا عَلَى تَأْيِيدِ الْحُكُومَةِ لِلسِّيَاسَةِ الْفَرَنْسِيَّةِ فِي
 الْأُمَمِ الْمُتَّحِدَةِ؟ - لَقَدْ تَسَلَّمْنَا مَكْتُوبَكُمْ اللَّطِيفَ الْمُرَّخَ
 فِي ١٣ تَمُوزَ - أَمَامَنَا مَهَامٌ كَثِيرَةٌ الْيَوْمَ فَلَا تَتَأَخَّرْ فِي الرُّجُوعِ
 مِنْ دَوَائِرِ الْأَمْنِ الْعَالَمِ - أُسْتُؤِنِفَتِ الْمُفَاوَضَاتُ عِنْدَ نِهَآيَةِ
 الْإِضْرَابِ - يُؤْمِنُ حِزْبُنَا بِوَحْدَةِ الْعَالَمِ الْعَرَبِيِّ - لَمْ تَسْأَلِنِ
 عَنْ نَتَآئِجِ الْإِضْرَابِ بِدُونِ أَنْ تَهْتَمِّي بِأَسْبَابِهِ؟ - عِنْدَمَا
 كُنْتُ شَابًّا قَرَأْتُ كِتَابَ تَارِيخِ وَطَنِي هَذَا ، وَحَفِظْتُهُ
 أَيْضًا - لَمْ تَعْمِدِ السُّلْطَاتُ اللَّبْنَانِيَّةُ إِلَى إِنْشَاءِ مِينَاءٍ فَقَطْ ،
 بَلْ أَنْشَأَتْ مَطَارًا أَيْضًا لِاسْتِقْبَالِ الْمَسَافِرِينَ وَهُوَ مِنْ أَحْدَثِ
 نَوْعٍ مُمَكِّنٍ - يَبْدَأُ فَصْلُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْجَدِيدِ فِي أَوَّلِ يَوْمٍ مِنْ
 الشَّهْرِ الْقَادِمِ - بَدَأَ الْقَاضِي يَقْرَأُ الْوَثِيقَةَ الْأُولَى بِصَوْتٍ

عَالٍ — نَشَأَتِ الْفِكْرَةُ الْمُوَيَّدَةُ لِتَأْسِيسِ مُحْكَمَةٍ دَوْلِيَّةٍ فِي
هُولَنْدَا عِنْدَ أَبْتِدَاءِ عَصْرِ الْحُكُومَةِ الْإِشْتِرَاقِيَّةِ الْأُولَى —
سَأَسْأَلُهُ لِمَذَا لَا يُسَاعِدُنَا فِي هَذِهِ الْأَزْمَةِ — زَعَمَ أَنَّهُ غَيْرُ
مَسْئُولٍ عَنْ هَذِهِ الْبَضَائِعِ .

The Ministry of Public Works has decided to establish a new office in the port area. We shall take all measures necessary to achieve our aims. Take this meat and tell the butcher that we cannot eat it. The government spokesman declared that the formation of another party would not be allowed at the present time. The Technical Agriculture Board has decided to put off the execution of its plan for another year; work will be resumed next spring. The Society for the Protection of Authors' Rights has protested to the Minister of the Interior against the increasing influence of the censorship (رَقَابَةُ). I intend to order the transfer of all our troops to the two main bases. I have asked him not to be late for (عَنْ) the meeting. He will order all members of the Liberal Party to support the coalition government.

CHAPTER XXIX

Assimilated Verbs

Assimilated verbs are those the first radical of which is **و** or **ي**. All verbs in common use with first radical **و** drop it in the imperfect active of the First Form, but verbs with first radical **ي** retain it. There are some modifications in the Fourth Form, which are given in detail below. The Seventh Form does not exist. In the Eighth Form the initial **و** or **ي** is assimilated to the characteristic **ت**, e.g. **اتَّصَلَ** from **وَصَلَ** and **اتَّبَسَ** from **يَبَسَ**. In the Fourth and Tenth Forms an initial **و** in the verbal noun changes to **ي**, e.g. **أَوْفَدَ**, “to delegate”, **إِيفَادٌ**; **إِسْتَوْدَعَ**, “to deposit”, **إِسْتِيدَاعٌ**.

Where a verb is both doubled and assimilated, e.g. **يُودُّ**, **وَدَّ**, “to love, like”, the initial **و** is not dropped.

Conjugation of Assimilated Verbs

وَعَدَ (-), “to promise”

Person	Perfect	Active		Jussive	Imperative
		Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive		
3. m. s.	وَعَدَ	يَعِدُ	يَعِدَ	يَعِدْ	

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Imper-ative
3. f. s.	وَعَدَتْ	تَعِدُ	تَعِدَ	تَعِدْ	
2. m. s.	وَعَدْتَ	تَعِدُ	تَعِدَ	تَعِدْ	عِدْ
2. m. du.	وَعَدْتُمَا	تَعِدَانِ	تَعِدَا	تَعِدَا	عِدَا
2. m. pl.	وَعَدْتُمْ	تَعِدُونَ	تَعِدُوا	تَعِدُوا	عِدُوا
2. f. s.	وَعَدْتَ	تَعِدِينَ	تَعِدِي	تَعِدِي	عِدِي
2. f. du.	وَعَدْتُمَا	تَعِدَانِ	تَعِدَا	تَعِدَا	عِدَا
2. f. pl.	وَعَدْتُنَّ	تَعِدْنَ	تَعِدْنَ	تَعِدْنَ	عِدْنَ
1. s.	وَعَدْتُ	أَعِدُ	أَعِدَ	أَعِدْ	
1. pl.	وَعَدْنَا	نَعِدُ	نَعِدَ	نَعِدْ	

Participle

وَاعِدٌ

Verbal Noun

وَعْدٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m.s.	وُعِدَ	يُوعَدُ
3. f.s.	وُعِدَتْ	تُوعَدُ
2. m.s.	وُعِدْتَ	تُوعَدُ
2. f.s.	وُعِدْتَ	تُوعَدِينَ
1. s.	وُعِدْتُ	أُوعَدُ

Participle

مَوْعُودٌ

(-) يَبَسَ "to be dry or brittle"

<u>Active</u>					
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	يَبَسَ	يَبْسُ	يَبْسَ	يَبْسُ	إِبْسْ
	Participle		Verbal Noun		
	يَابِسٌ		يَبْسٌ		
	No Passive				

أَوْفَدَ Form IV, "to delegate"

Person	Active			
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper-ative
3. m. s. :	أَوْفَدَ	يُوفِدُ	يُوفِدْ	
3. m. pl. :	أَوْفَدُوا	يُوفِدُونَ	يُوفِدُوا	
3. f. s. :	أَوْفَدَتْ	تُوفِدُ	تُوفِدْ	
3. f. pl. :	أَوْفَدْنَ	يُوفِدْنَ	يُوفِدْنَ	
2. m. s. :	أَوْفَدْتَ	تُوفِدُ	تُوفِدْ	أَوْفِدْ
2. m. pl. :	أَوْفَدْتُمْ	تُوفِدُونَ	تُوفِدُوا	أَوْفِدُوا
2. f. s. :	أَوْفَدْتِ	تُوفِدِينَ	تُوفِدِي	أَوْفِدِي
2. f. pl. :	أَوْفَدْتُنَّ	تُوفِدْنَ	تُوفِدْنَ	أَوْفِدْنَ
1. s. :	أَوْفَدْتُ	أُوفِدُ	أُوفِدْ	
	Participle		Verbal Noun	
	مُوفِدٌ		إِيفَادٌ	

Person	<u>Passive</u>		
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive
3. m. s.	أُوفِدَ	يُوفَدُ	يُوفَدُ
3. f. s.	أُوفِدَتْ	تُوفَدُ	تُوفَدُ
2. m. s.	أُوفِدْتَ	تُوفَدُ	تُوفَدُ
2. f. s.	أُوفِدْتَ	تُوفَدِينَ	تُوفَدِي
1 pl.	أُوفِدْنَا	نُوفَدُ	نُوفَدُ

Participle

مُوفَدٌ

أَيْقَظَ, Form IV, "to awaken" (trans.)

Person	<u>Active</u>				Imperative
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	
3. m. s.	أَيْقَظَ	يُوقِظُ	يُوقِظَ	يُوقِظُ	
3. m. pl.	أَيْقَظُوا	يُوقِظُونَ	يُوقِظُوا	يُوقِظُوا	
3. f. s.	أَيْقَظَتْ	تُوقِظُ	تُوقِظَ	تُوقِظُ	
3. f. pl.	أَيْقَظْنَ	يُوقِظْنَ	يُوقِظْنَ	يُوقِظْنَ	
2. m. s.	أَيْقَظْتَ	تُوقِظُ	تُوقِظَ	تُوقِظُ	أَيْقِظْ
2. m. pl.	أَيْقَظْتُمْ	تُوقِظُونَ	تُوقِظُوا	تُوقِظُوا	أَيْقِظُوا
2. f. s.	أَيْقَظْتَ	تُوقِظِينَ	تُوقِظِي	تُوقِظِي	أَيْقِظِي
2. f. pl.	أَيْقَظْتُنَّ	تُوقِظْنَ	تُوقِظْنَ	تُوقِظْنَ	أَيْقِظْنَ
1. s.	أَيْقَظْتُ	أُوقِظُ	أُوقِظَ	أُوقِظُ	

Participle

مُوقِظٌ

Verbal Noun

إيقاظٌ

Person	Perfect	Passive		
		Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive
3. m. s.	أَوْقَظَ	يُوقَظُ	يُوقَظَ	يُوقَظْ
3. m. pl.	أَوْقَظُوا	يُوقَظُونَ	يُوقَظُوا	يُوقَظُوا
3. f. s.	أَوْقَظَتْ	تُوقَظُ	تُوقَظَ	تُوقَظْ
3. f. pl.	أَوْقَظْنَ	يُوقَظْنَ	يُوقَظْنَ	يُوقَظْنَ
2. m. s.	أَوْقَظْتَ	تُوقَظُ	تُوقَظَ	تُوقَظْ
2. m. pl.	أَوْقَظْتُمْ	تُوقَظُونَ	تُوقَظُوا	تُوقَظُوا
2. f. s.	أَوْقَظْتَ	تُوقَظِينَ	تُوقَظِي	تُوقَظِي
2. f. pl.	أَوْقَظْتُنَّ	تُوقَظْنَ	تُوقَظْنَ	تُوقَظْنَ
1. s.	أَوْقَظْتُ	أُوقَظُ	أُوقَظَ	أُوقَظْ

Participle

مُوقِظٌ

CHAPTER XXIX

(Word List, Section 5)

EXERCISE 29:

Assimilated Verbs

اسْتَوْضَحَ	to ask for an explanation; investigate	وَدَعَ (-)	to let; allow; abandon
تَوَفَّرَ لـ	to be provided, available	وَرِثَ (-). وِرَاثَةً	to inherit
وَدَّ. يَوَدُّ. وَدُّ	to like, wish	أَيْقَظَ	to wake up (trans.)
مُرَبَّعٌ	square		

مِنَ الْوَاجِبِ عَلَيْنَا أَنْ نُوَاصِلَ عَمَلَنَا هَذَا حَتَّى نَصِلَ إِلَى هَدَفِنَا
الْنَّهَائِيِّ — مِنَ الْمُتَوَقَّعِ أَنْ تُوجَّهَ أَسْئَلَةُ لِرئيسِ الْوِزَارَةِ فِي
الْجَلْسَةِ الْقَادِمَةِ يَسْتَوْضَحُ فِيهَا أَعْضَاءُ الْمَعَارَضَةِ عَنْ سَبَبِ إِيقَافِ
الطَّائِرَاتِ الْأَجْنَبِيَّةِ فِي الْمَطَارِ الدُّوَلِيِّ — لَا تَدْعُوا أُمُورًا
بَسِيطَةً كَهَذِهِ تَقِفُ حَجَرَ عَثْرَةٍ فِي سَبِيلِ اتِّحَادِكُمْ — وَافَقَتْ
الْأَغْلَبِيَّةُ عَلَى الدُّسْتُورِ وَسَيُوضَعُ مَوْضِعُ التَّنْفِيدِ حَالَمَا يُوَافِقُ

رئيسُ البلادِ عليه — اتَّصلُ بي تِلْفُونِيًّا لَدَى وُصُولِكَ إِلَى
الْقَاهِرَةِ — اتَّفَقَتِ الْبَلَدِيَّةُ مَعَ إِدَارَةِ الشَّرِكَةِ عَلَى تَشْيِيدِ
مُسْتَوْصَفٍ جَدِيدٍ بِالْقُرْبِ مِنَ الْمُسْتَشْفَى — مِنَ الْجَدِيرِ
بِالذِّكْرِ أَنَّ لُبْنَانَ يَسْتَوْرِدُ أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا يُصَدِّرُ —
لَا يُوجَدُ مِثْلُ هَذَا النَّيِّدِ إِلَّا فِي الْمَانِيَا — أَعِدُّكُمْ بِأَنَّا
سَنَحَافِظُ عَلَى الرِّوَابِطِ الْوَثِيقَةِ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَ حُلَفَائِنَا — عِدِينِي بِأَنْ
تَكُونِي هُنَا فِي السَّاعَةِ الرَّابِعَةِ وَالْأَوَّلَى تَتَأَخَّرِي عَنْ هَذَا الْمِلْعَادِ —
نَوَدُّ أَنْ تَكُونَ لِلْوَفْدِ فُرْصَةً لِمُنَاقَشَةِ الْمَوَاضِعِ وَالتَّوَصُّلِ
إِلَى حُلِّ لَجَمِيعِهَا — لَا تَرُدُّ هَذِهِ الْكَلِمَةَ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا فِي اللُّغَةِ
الْفَصِيحَةِ الْعَصْرِيَّةِ — نَظَرًا لِمَوْقِعِ لُبْنَانَ الْجُغْرَافِيِّ فَإِنَّ طُرُقَ
الْمَوَاصِلَاتِ الْجَوِّيَّةِ وَالْبَحْرِيَّةِ مُتَوَفَّرَةٌ لَدَيْهِ .

In unity is strength. As a result of the programme of economic assistance that the parliamentary mission has laid down, the island will move rapidly towards complete independence. I cannot find any link between the present financial crisis and the operations of the money-changers. It is expected that the import of oil will be forbidden after today. That decision will probably bring all survey operations to a halt immediately. We must do our best

to unite the two companies. As a result of the porters' strike the distribution of recent imports of coffee has stopped. Protests are reaching the government from all sides, but there is no member of the cabinet who will take any practical steps. Wake me up at six in the morning, as I want to be at the clinic at a quarter past eight.

CHAPTER XXX

Hollow Verbs

Hollow verbs are verbs that have **و** or **ي** as their middle radical. They are of three types :

- (a) قَالَ ; imperfect characteristic (ُ)
- (b) صَاحَ ; » » (َ)
- (c) خَافَ ; » » (ِ)

The rules governing the changes that occur in the weak letters of these verbs will be found in Appendix E.

Of the derived forms of hollow verbs, the Second, Third, Fifth and Sixth are regular. Examples of the modifications that occur in forms Four, Seven, Eight and Ten are given in this Chapter.

Conjugation of Hollow Verbs

سَاقَ , يَسُوقُ , “to drive”

Person	Perfect	<u>Active</u>		Jussive	Imper- ative
		Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive		
3. m. s.	سَاقَ	يَسُوقُ	يَسُوقَ	يَسُوقْ	
3. f. s.	سَاقَتْ	تَسُوقُ	تَسُوقَ	تَسُوقِ	
3. f. pl.	سَقْنَ	يَسُقْنَ	يَسُقْنَ	يَسُقْنَ	

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Imperative
2. m. s.	سَقَتَ	تَسُوقُ	تَسُوقَ	تَسُقْ	سُقْ
2. m. pl.	سَقَتُمْ	تَسُوقُونَ	تَسُوقُوا	تَسُوقُوا	سُوقُوا
2. f. s.	سَقَتِ	تَسُوقِينَ	تَسُوقِي	تَسُوقِي	سُوقِي
2. m.f. dual	سَقْتُمَا	تَسُوقَانِ	تَسُوقَا	تَسُوقَا	سُوقَا
2. f. pl.	سَقَتْنَ	تَسُقْنَ	تَسُقْنَ	تَسُقْنَ	سُقْنَ
1. s.	سَقْتُ	أَسُوقُ	أَسُوقَ	أَسُقْ	
1. pl.	سَقْنَا	نَسُوقُ	نَسُوقَ	نَسُقْ	

Participle

سَائِقٌ

Verbal Noun

سَوْقٌ، سِيَاقَةٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive
3. m. s.	سِيقَ	يُسَاقُ	يُسَقْ
3. f. s.	سِيقَتْ	تُسَاقُ	تُسَقْ
3. f. pl.	سِقْنَ	يُسَقْنَ	يُسَقْنَ
2. m. s.	سِقْتَ	تُسَاقُ	تُسَقْ
2. m. pl.	سِقْتُمْ	تُسَاقُونَ	تُسَاقُوا
2. f. s.	سِقَتِ	تُسَاقِينَ	تُسَاقِي
2. f. pl.	سِقَتْنَ	تُسَقْنَ	تُسَقْنَ
1. s.	سِقْتُ	أُسَاقُ	أُسَقْ

Participle

مَسُوقٌ

Note the reversal of the normal vowelling pattern in the perfect passive (see Appendix E).

“to sell” , يَبِيعُ , بَاعَ

Person	Perfect	Active		Jussive	Imperative
		Impf. Indic.	Subjunctive		
3. m. s.	بَاعَ	يَبِيعُ	يَبِيعَ	يَبِيعْ	
3. f. pl.	بِعْنَ	يَبِيعْنَ	يَبِيعْنَ	يَبِيعْنَ	
2. m. s.	بَعْتَ	تَبِيعُ	تَبِيعَ	تَبِيعْ	بِعْ
2. m. pl.	بَعْتُمْ	تَبِيعُونَ	تَبِيعُوا	تَبِيعُوا	يَبِيعُوا
2. f. s.	بَعْتِ	تَبِيعِينَ	تَبِيعِي	تَبِيعِي	يَبِيعِي
2. m.f. du.	بَعْتُمَا	تَبِيعَانِ	تَبِيعَا	تَبِيعَا	يَبِيعَا
1. s.	بَعْتُ	أَبِيعُ	أَبِيعَ	أَبِيعْ	
		Participle	Verbal Noun		
		بَائِعٌ	يَبِيعٌ		

Person	Passive	
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m. s.	يُبَاعَ	يُبَاعُ
3. f. pl.	يُبْعْنَ	يُبْعْنَ
2. m. s.	يُبْعْتَ	يُبْعُ
2. m. pl.	يُبْعْتُمْ	يُبْعُونَ
2. f. s.	يُبْعْتِ	يُبْعِينَ
2. f. du.	يُبْعْتُمَا	يُبْعَانِ
1. s.	يُبْعْتُ	أُبَاعُ

Participle

مَسِيْعٌ

“to fear” , يَخَافُ , خَافَ

Active

Perfect	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	خَافَ	يَخَافُ	يَخَافَ	يَخَفْ	
3. f. pl.	خَفْنَ	يَخْفَنَ	يَخْفَنَ	يَخْفُنَ	
2. m. s.	خَفْتَ	تَخَافُ	تَخَافَ	تَخَفْ	خَفْ
2. m. du.	خَفْتُمَا	تَخَافَانِ	تَخَافَا	تَخَافَا	خَافَا
2. f. s.	خَفْتِ	تَخَافِينَ	تَخَافِي	تَخَافِي	خَافِي
2. f. pl.	خَفْتُنَّ	تَخْفَنَ	تَخْفَنَ	تَخْفُنَ	خَفْنَ
1. pl.	خَفْنَا	نَخَافُ	نَخَافَ	نَخَفْ	

Participle

Verbal Noun

خَائِفٌ

خَوْفٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Jussive
3. m. s.	خِيفَ	يُخَفْ
3. f. pl.	خِفْنَ	يُخْفَنَ
2. m. s.	خِفْتَ	تُخَفْ
2. m. du.	خِفْتُمَا	تُخَافَا

Person	Perfect	Jussive
2. f. s.	خَفَتْ	تُخَافِي
2. f. pl.	خَفْتَنَّ	تُخَفْنَ
1. pl.	خَفْنَا	نُخَفْ

Participle

مُخَوِّفٌ

Note that in verbs with characteristic kasra and fatha in the imperfect, there is no difference between the Active and Passive of the Perfect in the First and Second Persons and the Third Person Feminine Plural (i.e. the contracted forms). Some people make a difference by pointing the Active with kasra and the passive with dhamma (e.g. بَعَتْ and بُعِتَ) and this is a useful distinction; but there is no warrant for it (see Wright, Volume I p. 85 paragraph 156).

Derived Forms of the Hollow Verbs

	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Active Jussive	Imperative	Participle	Verbal Noun
II	رَوَّعَ	يُرَوِّعُ	يُرَوِّعْ	رَوِّعْ	مُرَوِّعٌ	تَرَوِّيعٌ
	To terrify					
III	بَايَعَ	يُبَايِعُ	يُبَايِعْ	بَايِعْ	مُبَايِعٌ	مُبَايَعَةٌ
	To make a contract (of sale or allegiance)					
IV	أَرَادَ	يُرِيدُ	يُرِدْ	أَرِدْ	مُرِيدٌ	إِرَادَةٌ
	To want					

	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper- ative	Parti- ciple	Verbal Noun
V	تَعَوَّدَ	يَتَعَوَّدُ	يَتَعَوَّدْ	تَعَوَّدْ	مُتَعَوِّدٌ	تَعَوُّدٌ
	To be accustomed					
VI	تَعَاوَنَ	يَتَعَاوَنُ	يَتَعَاوَنْ	تَعَاوَنْ	مُتَعَاوِنٌ	تَعَاوُنٌ
	To cooperate					
VII	اِنْحَازَ	يَنْحَازُ	يَنْحَازْ	اِنْحَازْ	مُنْحَازٌ	اِنْحِازٌ
	To side with					
VIII	اِحْتِاجَ	يَحْتِاجُ	يَحْتِجْ	اِحْتَجْ	مُحْتَاجٌ	اِحْتِياجٌ
	To need					
X	اِسْتَرَاَحَ	يَسْتَرِيحُ	يَسْتَرِحْ	اِسْتَرِحْ	مُسْتَرِيحٌ	اِسْتِرَاحَةٌ
	To rest					

Passive

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Participle
II	رُوِّعَ	يُرَوِّعُ	مُرَوِّعٌ
III	بُويِعَ	يُبَايِعُ	مُبَايِعٌ
IV	أُرِيدَ	يُرَادُ	مُرَادٌ
V	تُعَوَّدُ	يَتَعَوَّدُ	(not used)
VI	تُعَاوَنُ	يَتَعَاوَنُ	(not used)
VII	(does not exist)		
VIII	أُحْتِجَ	يُحْتَجُّ	مُحْتَاجٌ
X	أُسْتَرِيحَ	يُسْتَرَاَحُ	مُسْتَرَاَحٌ

Note : although the passive of تَعَوَّدَ , تَعَاوَنَ and اِسْتَرَاَحَ could

only be used impersonally, the passive participles may be found as nouns of place, e.g. مُسْتَرَاَحٌ , “a rest-room or latrine”.

فَادَ Form IV, أَفَادَ , “to benefit”

Person	Perfect	Active		
		Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	أَفَادَ	يُفِيدُ	يُفِدْ	
3. f. pl.	أَفَدْنَ	يُفِدْنَ	يُفِدْنَ	
2. m. s.	أَفَدْتَ	تُفِيدُ	تُفِدْ	أَفِدْ
2. m. pl.	أَفَدْتُمْ	تُفِيدُونَ	تُفِيدُوا	أَفِيدُوا
	Participle	Verbal Noun		
	مُفِيدٌ	إِفَادَةٌ		

Person	Passive	
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m. s.	أُفِيدَ	يُفَادُ
3. f. pl.	أُفِدْنَ	يُفَدْنَ
2. m. s.	أُفِدْتَ	تُفَادُ
2. m. pl.	أُفِدْتُمْ	تُفَادُونَ

Participle

مُفَادٌ

حَازَ Form VII, اِنْحَازَ , “to side (with)”

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	اِنْحَازَ	يَنْحَازُ	يَنْحَازْ	
3. f. pl.	اِنْحَازْنَ	يَنْحَازْنَ	يَنْحَازْنَ	
2. m. s.	اِنْحَازْتَ	تَنْحَازُ	تَنْحَازْ	اِنْحَازْ
2. m. pl.	اِنْحَازْتُمْ	تَنْحَازُونَ	تَنْحَازُوا	اِنْحَازُوا
	Participle	Verbal Noun		
	مُنْحَازٌ	اِنْحِيَازٌ		

Passive

Participle

مُنْحَازٌ

خَارَ Form VIII, اِخْتَارَ , “to choose”

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	اِخْتَارَ	يَخْتَارُ	يَخْتَرْ	
3. f. pl.	اِخْتَرْنَ	يَخْتَرْنَ	يَخْتَرْنَ	
2. m. s.	اِخْتَرْتَ	تَخْتَارُ	تَخْتَرْ	اِخْتَرْ
2. m. pl.	اِخْتَرْتُمْ	تَخْتَارُونَ	تَخْتَارُوا	اِخْتَارُوا
	Participle	Verbal Noun		
	مُخْتَارٌ	اِخْتِيَارٌ		

Person	<u>Passive</u>	
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m. s.	أُخْتِرَ	يُخْتَارُ
3. f. pl.	أُخْتِرْنَ	يُخْتَرْنَ
2. m. s.	أَخْتَرْتَ	تُخْتَارُ
2. m. pl.	أَخْتَرْتُمْ	تُخْتَارُونَ
<u>Participle</u>		
مُخْتَارٌ		

عَانَ Form X, اِسْتَعَانَ, "to seek help"

Person	<u>Active</u>			
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	اِسْتَعَانَ	يَسْتَعِينُ	يَسْتَعِنْ	
3. f. pl.	اِسْتَعَنَّ	يَسْتَعِنَّ	يَسْتَعِنَّ	
2. m. s.	اِسْتَعَنْتَ	تَسْتَعِينُ	تَسْتَعِنْ	اِسْتَعِنْ
2. m. pl.	اِسْتَعَنْتُمْ	تَسْتَعِينُونَ	تَسْتَعِينُوا	اِسْتَعِينُوا
<u>Participle</u>		<u>Verbal Noun</u>		
مُسْتَعِينٌ		اِسْتِعَانَةٌ		

Person	<u>Passive</u>	
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m. s.	اُسْتُعِينَ	يُسْتَعَانُ
3. f. pl.	اُسْتُعِنَّ	يُسْتَعَنَّ

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
2. m. s.	اُسْتَعْنَتْ	تُسْتَعَانُ
2. m. pl.	اُسْتَعْنْتُمْ	تُسْتَعَانُونَ
	Participle	
	مُسْتَعَانٌ	

Note: the verbal nouns of the Fourth and Tenth forms of hollow verbs have an added ta marbuta. However, the middle radical in a Tenth Form hollow verb sometimes remains strong, e.g. اِسْتَصَوَّبَ , “to consider correct”; and sometimes both strong and weak forms exist from the same root, e.g. اِسْتَجَابَ , “to respond” and اِسْتَجَوَّبَ , “to interrogate”. When the weak letter remains strong in this way the verbal noun does not take ta marbuta, e.g. اِسْتِصَوَابٌ , “approval” and اِسْتِجَوَابٌ , “interrogation”.

EXERCISE 30:

Hollow Verbs

ذَرَّةٌ ج ات to be aligned انْحَازَ

حَالٌ (و) دُونَ . حَيْلُولَةٌ to prevent

أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَتَامَ سَاعَةً أَوْ سَاعَتَيْنِ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ — اِبْتِدَاءً مِنْ
 الْيَوْمِ تَزْدَادُ أَجُورُ السَّفَرِ فِي كُلِّ الطَّائِرَاتِ التَّابِعَةِ لِلشَّرِكَاتِ
 الْوَلِيَّةِ — تَزِيدُ قِيَمَةُ الْوَارِدَاتِ عَلَى قِيَمَةِ الصَّادِرَاتِ —
 إِنَّ الْبَرَامِجَ الَّتِي تُذَاعُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْمَحَطَّةِ الْأَجَنِبِيَّةِ تَزِيدُ الْمَوْقِفَ
 خُطُورَةً — حَاوَلْتُ أَنْ أَسْتَشِيرَ الْقُنْصُلَ بِخُصُوصِ هَذِهِ النُّقْطَةِ
 وَلَكِنِّي لَمْ أَسْتَطِعْ أَنْ أَتَّصِلَ بِهِ — دَارَ الْحَدِيثُ لَيْلَةً أَمْسَ
 فِي بَيْتِنَا حَوْلَ الْعَالَمِ الَّذِي نَعِيشُ فِيهِ ، فَاجْمَعْنَا عَلَى أَنَّهُ يَتَغَيَّرُ
 يَوْمًا بَعْدَ يَوْمٍ وَسَيَصِيرُ بَعْدَ قَلِيلٍ غَيْرَ مُنَاسِبٍ لِلْحَضَارَةِ
 الْإِنْسَانِيَّةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ — وَعَدَ مُدِيرُ الْعَمَلِ أَنْ يَقُومَ بِاسْتِشَارَاتِ
 مُفَصَّلَةٍ مَعَ الْمَسَاحِينِ بَعْدَ أَنْ يَعُودَ مِنْ زِيَارَتِهِ لِإِنْكِلَابًا —
 أَضَافَ الْمَذِيغُ قَائِلًا: إِنَّ الدُّوَلَ غَيْرَ الْمُنْحَازَةِ تَبْذُلُ جُحُودًا
 جَبَّارَةً لِلْحَيْلُولَةِ دُونَ وَقُوعِ حَرْبٍ ذَرِّيَّةٍ — تُفِيدُ الْأَنْبَاءُ

الْوَارِدَةُ مِنْ وَهْرَانَ أَنَّ بَرِيطَانِيَا أَعْتَرَفَتْ بِاسْتِقْلَالِ الْجَزَائِرِ —
حَاوَلَ الْمَسَاحُونَ أَنْ يَجْتَازُوا الْحُدُودَ وَلَكِنَّ الْحُرَّاسَ أَوْقَفُوهُمْ.

What will you say when the girl's father asks you about your intentions? The professor says that he intends to resign because, without previous consultation, the Minister of Education intends to prevent his project for the teaching of Middle East history from being put into effect. When I was a young man I liked visiting the monastery next to my uncle's house to photograph the statues in the courtyard. During the attack the hospital was hit by fire (plur.) from the enemy's guns. How many men will volunteer for the Arabic language course? The number of students who have registered their names has increased this year, but they are an undistinguished lot and will not derive any benefit from the instruction. We have advised the Foreign Office to change its policy. I referred to this point in an article of mine in the university magazine. Sell me your carpets at once: are you not afraid that the tax will be increased.

CHAPTER XXXI

Defective Verbs

Defective verbs are those the last radical of which is **و** or **ي**.
The various patterns of these verbs are listed below with notes on their peculiarities.

Active

“to hope”, **يَرْجُو**, **رَجَا**

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	رَجَا	يَرْجُو	يَرْجُوَ	يَرْجُ	
3. m. du.	رَجَوْا	يَرْجُونَ	يَرْجُوا	يَرْجُوا	
3. m. pl.	رَجَوْا	يَرْجُونَ	يَرْجُوا	يَرْجُوا	
3. f. s.	رَجَتْ	تَرْجُو	تَرْجُوَ	تَرْجُ	
3. f. du.	رَجَتَا	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوا	تَرْجُوا	
3. f. pl.	رَجْنَ	يَرْجُونَ	يَرْجُونَ	يَرْجُونَ	
2. m. s.	رَجَوْتَ	تَرْجُو	تَرْجُوَ	تَرْجُ	أَرْجُ
2. m. du.	رَجَوْتُمَا	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوا	تَرْجُوا	أَرْجُوا
2. m. pl.	رَجَوْتُمْ	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوا	تَرْجُوا	أَرْجُوا
2. f. s.	رَجَوْتِ	تَرْجِينَ	تَرْجِي	تَرْجِي	أَرْجِي
2. f. du.	رَجَوْتُمَا	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوا	تَرْجُوا	أَرْجُوا
2. f. pl.	رَجَوْنَّ	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُونَ	أَرْجُونَ
1. s.	رَجَوْتُ	أَرْجُو	أَرْجُوَ	أَرْجُ	
1. pl.	رَجَوْنَا	نَرْجُو	نَرْجُوَ	نَرْجُ	

Note: the short vowel of the middle radical is retained when it is

fatha (-), e.g. رَجَوْا , “they hoped” (not رَجُوا).

رَمَى , يَرْمِي , “to throw”

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
.3. m. s	رَمَى	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِ	
3. m. du.	رَمَيَا	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِيَا	
3. m. pl.	رَمَوْا	يَرْمُونِ	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمُوا	
3. f. s.	رَمَتْ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	
3. f. du.	رَمَتَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا	
3. f. pl.	رَمَيْنَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	
2. m. s.	رَمَيْتَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	اِرْمِ
2. f. s.	رَمَيْتِ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	اِرْمِي
2. f. pl.	رَمَيْتُنَّ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	اِرْمِينَ
1. s.	رَمَيْتُ	اَرْمِي	اَرْمِي	اَرْمِ	
1. pl.	رَمَيْنَا	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِ	

Note: when a suffix is added to the past tense the ي becomes ا ,

e.g. “he threw it”, رَمَاهُ .

يَنْسِي , يَنْسَى , “to forget”

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Imper-ative
3. m. s.	نَسِيَ	يَنْسَى	يَنْسَى	يَنْسَ	
3. m. du.	نَسِيَا	يَنْسِيَانِ	يَنْسِيَا	يَنْسِيَا	
3. m. pl.	نَسُوا	يَنْسَوْنَ	يَنْسَوْا	يَنْسَوْا	
3. f. s.	نَسِيَتْ	تَنْسَى	تَنْسَى	تَنْسَ	
3. f. du.	نَسِيَتَا	تَنْسِيَانِ	تَنْسِيَا	تَنْسِيَا	
3. f. pl.	نَسِينَ	يَنْسَيْنَ	يَنْسَيْنَ	يَنْسَيْنَ	
2. m. s.	نَسَيْتَ	تَنْسَى	تَنْسَى	تَنْسَ	اِنْسَ
2. f. s.	نَسَيْتِ	تَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسِيْ	تَنْسِيْ	اِنْسِيْ
2. f. pl.	نَسَيْتُنَّ	تَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيْنَ	اِنْسَيْنَ
1. s.	نَسَيْتُ	اَنْسَى	اَنْسَى	اَنْسَ	
1. pl.	نَسِينَا	نَنْسَى	نَنْسَى	نَنْسَ	

يَسْعَى , يَسْعَى , “to endeavour, run.”

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Imper-ative
3. m. s.	سَعَى	يَسْعَى	يَسْعَى	يَسْعَ	
3. m. du.	سَعِيَا	يَسْعِيَانِ	يَسْعِيَا	يَسْعِيَا	
3. m. pl.	سَعَوْا	يَسْعَوْنَ	يَسْعَوْا	يَسْعَوْا	

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. f. s.	سَعَتْ	تَسْعَى	تَسْعَى	تَسْعَ	
3. f. du.	سَعَتَا	تَسْعَيَانِ	تَسْعَيَا	تَسْعَيَا	
3. f. pl.	سَعَيْنَ	يَسْعَيْنَ	يَسْعَيْنَ	يَسْعَيْنَ	
2. m. s.	سَعَيْتَ	تَسْعَى	تَسْعَى	تَسْعَ	إِسْعَ
2. f. s.	سَعَيْتِ	تَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَى	تَسْعَى	إِسْعَى
2. f. pl.	سَعَيْتُنَّ	تَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيْنَ	إِسْعَيْنَ
1. s.	سَعَيْتُ	أَسْعَى	أَسْعَى	أَسْعَ	
1. pl.	سَعَيْنَا	نَسْعَى	نَسْعَى	نَسْعَ	

رَضِيَ , يَرْضَى , "to be satisfied"

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	رَضِيَ	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَ	
3. m. pl.	رَضُوا	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضَوْا	يَرْضَوْا	
3. f. s.	رَضِيَتْ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	
3. f. pl.	رَضِينَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	
2. m. s.	رَضَيْتَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	إِرْضَ
2. m. du.	رَضَيْتُمَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَا	إِرْضَيَا
2. m. pl.	رَضَيْتُمْ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضَوْا	تَرْضَوْا	إِرْضَوْا
2. f. s.	رَضَيْتِ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	إِرْضَى
2. f. pl.	رَضَيْتُنَّ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	إِرْضَيْنَ

Note: although the last radical of رَضِيَ was originally و (as can be seen, for example, from its verbal noun رِضْوَانٌ) there is no surviving difference between its conjugation and that of نَسِيَ .

Passive

In the passive all five kinds of defective verb are conjugated on the same pattern.

دَعَا (دَعَا) , يَدْعُو , "to summon"

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect	Subjunctive	Jussive
3. m. s.	دُعِيَ	يُدْعَى	يُدْعَى	يُدْعَ
3. m. pl.	دُعُوا	يُدْعَوْنَ	يُدْعَوْا	يُدْعَوْا
3. f. s.	دُعِيَتْ	تُدْعَى	تُدْعَى	تُدْعَ
3. f. pl.	دُعِينَ	يُدْعَيْنَ	يُدْعَيْنَ	يُدْعَيْنَ
2. m. s.	دُعِيتَ	تُدْعَى	تُدْعَى	تُدْعَ
2. m. pl.	دُعِيتُمْ	تُدْعَوْنَ	تُدْعَوْا	تُدْعَوْا
2. f. s.	دُعِيتِ	تُدْعَيْنَ	تُدْعَيْنَ	تُدْعَيْنَ
	etc.	etc.		

The Active and Passive Participles.

The participles of defective verbs are formed in accordance with the same principles as those of strong verbs but the weak letter as the third radical makes some changes necessary in declining them.

The active participle of all kinds of defective verb (including the derived forms) is declined on the pattern of **قَاضٍ** (Chapter IV), e.g., from **رَجَا** , **يَرْجُو** :

	Indefinite	Definite
Masc. sing. nom. and gen.	رَاجٍ	الرَّاجِي
acc.	رَاجِيًا	الرَّاجِيَّ
Masc. dual nom.	رَاجِيَانِ	الرَّاجِيَانِ
acc. and gen.	رَاجِيَيْنِ	الرَّاجِيَيْنِ
Plural nom.	رَاجُونَ	الرَّاجُونَ
acc. and gen.	رَاجِينَ	الرَّاجِينَ

The feminine sing. **رَاجِيَةٌ** (plural **رَاجِيَاتٌ**) is regular.

The passive participle follows two patterns: verbs of the pattern **رَجَا** have a passive participle **مَرْجُوءٌ** ; all others are of the pattern **مَرْمِيٌّ** . Both decline regularly.

The Derived Forms of Defective Verbs

The conjugation of all the derived forms of all defective verbs is on the same pattern as the Derived Forms of **رَمَى** , **يَرْمِي** , except that, as in the First Form, the short vowel of the middle radical is never lost when it is fatha.

Active

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Imperative	Verbal Noun	Meaning
II	رَبَّى	يُرِّي	يُرِّي	يُرَبِّ	رَبِّ	تَرْيَّةٌ	To bring up, rear
III	نَادَى	يُنَادِي	يُنَادِي	يُنَادِ	نَادِ	مُنَادَاةٌ نِدَاءٌ	To call or summon
IV	أَعْطَى	يُعْطِي	يُعْطِي	يُعْطِ	أَعْطِ	إِعْطَاءٌ	To give
V	تَمَشَّى	يَتَمَشَّى	يَتَمَشَّى	يَتَمَشَّ	تَمَشَّ	تَمَشُّ	To take a walk
VI	تَنَاسَى	يَتَنَاسَى	يَتَنَاسَى	يَتَنَاسَ	تَنَاسَ	تَنَاسٍ	To pretend to forget
VII	انْقَضَى	يَنْقُضِي	يَنْقُضِي	يَنْقُضِ	انْقُضْ	إِنْقِضَاءٌ	To be ended
VIII	ادَّعَى	يَدَّعِي	يَدَّعِي	يَدَّعِ	ادَّعِ	ادِّعَاءٌ	To allege, claim
IX	wanting						
X	اسْتَعْنَى	يَسْتَعْنِي	يَسْتَعْنِي	يَسْتَعِنْ	اسْتَعِنْ	اسْتِعْنَاءٌ	To dispense with

Active participle : see note on previous page.

Passive

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic. & Sub-junctive	Jussive	Participle
II	رُبِّي	يُرَبَّى	يُرَبِّ	مُرَبَّى
III	نُودِيَ	يُنَادَى	يُنَادِ	مُنَادَى
IV	أُعْطِيَ	يُعْطَى	يُعْطِ	مُعْطَى
V	تُمَشَّى	يَتَمَشَّى	يَتَمَشَّ	not used
VI	تُنُوسَى	يَتَنَاسَى	يَتَنَاسَ	مُتَنَاسَى

Form	Perfect	Impf. Indic. & Sub- junctive	Jussive	Participle
VII	does not exist			
VIII	أَدْعَى	يُدْعَى	يُدَّعَ	مُدَّعَى
X	أُسْتُغْنَى	يُسْتُغْنَى	يُسْتَغْنَ	مُسْتُغْنَى

The Passive Participles of the derived forms are indeclinable in the masculine singular. When indefinite they have tanwin of fatha and when definite fatha only, e.g. أَلْقَى (to throw) gives مُلْقَى and الْمُلْقَى for all cases. The feminine, e.g. مُلْقَاة, is regular.

EXERCISE 31 :

Defective Verbs

تَلِيَّةٌ to answer (a call, order or invitation) . لَيَّ . تَلِيَّةٌ

لَا تَنْسَ أَنَّنَا نَسْعَى دَائِمًا لِلْمُحَافَظَةِ عَلَى مَصَالِحِكُمْ — يَنْبَغِي
لَنَا أَنْ نَبْقَى فِي الْوَطَنِ لِنَشْتَرِكَ فِي بِنَاءِ نِظَامٍ أَجْتِمَاعِيٍّ جَدِيدٍ
عَلَى أَسَاسِ التَّعَاوُنِ وَالْعَدْلِ — تُرِيدُ الْحُكُومَةُ الْمِصْرِيَّةُ أَنْ
تَبْنِيَ خَزَانًا جَبَّارًا فِي جَنُوبِ الْقَطْرِ الْمِصْرِيِّ ، وَإِنَّهَا تُجْرِي
الآنَ عَمَلِيَّاتٍ مِسَاحَةٍ تَمْضِي بَعْدَ أَنْتِهَائِهَا إِلَى وَضْعِ الْأُسُسِ
لِلسَّدِّ الْعَالِي الَّذِي دَارَ الْحَدِيثُ حَوْلَهُ فِي كُلِّ مَجَالِسٍ أَوْرُوبَا
مُنْذُ سَنَةٍ كَامِلَةٍ — سَيُلْقِي الْوَزِيرُ غَدًا مُحَاضَرَةً عَنِ الْبَرْنَامِجِ
الْجَدِيدِ الَّذِي تَقُومُ بِهِ مَصْلَحَةُ الطَّاقَةِ الْكَهْرَبَائِيَّةِ فِي الْمُنْطَقَةِ
الْجَنُوبِيَّةِ — وَبَعْدَ اسْتِعْرَاضِ وَحَدَاتِ الْجَيْشِ مَضَى الْقَائِدُ
يَقُولُ إِنَّ الْجَيْشَ مُسْتَعِدٌّ لِمُقَاوَمَةِ أَيِّ أَعْتِدَاءٍ عَلَى أَرْضِ الْوَطَنِ
وَلَرَدِّ الْمُعْتَدِينَ إِلَى مَا وَرَاءَ حُدُودِهِمْ — سَتَشْتَرِي زَوْجَتِي سَيَّارَةً
مِنْ أَلْمَانِيَا تَسُوقُ بِهَا إِلَى فَرَنْسَا لِمُزَارَعَةِ وَالِدَتِهَا — لَمْ يُسْتَدْعَ
السَّافِرُ مِنْ رُوسِيَا كَمَا أَنَّهُ لَمْ تُجَرَ أَيَّةُ مُحَادَثَاتٍ مَعَهُ — سَوْفَ
نَتَعَشَّى غَدًا فِي مَطْعَمٍ عِنْدَ الْبَحْرِ تَلِيَّةٌ لِدَعْوَةٍ تَلَقَّيْنَاهَا مِنْ

المدير — بعد أن أنهت البعثة محادثاتها مع رئيس الشركة
أبدت رغبته في زيارة معامل الحديد — أُلقيت علينا في
الفحص الأخير أسئلة استطعنا الإجابة عنها كلها — يبدو
أنكم لم تنتهوا من أشغالكم بعد — حكينا لهم قصة
مضحكة عن المناقشة التي جرت بين الحفير والمساح — مهما
تعملوا من خير تلقوه .

Why did you not summon all the members of the committee to the special meeting? I was unable to give my secretary anything this year. I have told her to complain to the department of taxes. You ought not to sign any document without reading it. Please buy some stamps for this letter. We cannot do without passports on this journey. Negotiations are now under way between the oil companies and the Ministry of Finance. The workmen have complained that their wages are not sufficient to meet all their needs. I have invited them to discuss the matter with me, but I fear they will not be satisfied with their present standard of living. Anyway, I have not yet (لم ... بعد) received their reply.

CHAPTER XXXII

Doubly Weak Verbs

Doubly weak verbs follow the rules for assimilated, hamzated and defective verbs. A root that is hollow and defective is treated as defective only, its middle radical being treated as strong, e.g.

يَأْوِي , يَرْوِي ; imperfect أَوَى , رَوَى .

The following are examples of the conjugation of some of the commoner patterns of doubly weak verbs and their derived forms :

جَاءَ (-) , “to come”

Person	Active			
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	جَاءَ	يَجِيءُ	يَجِيءْ	
3. m. du.	جَاءَا	يَجِيئَانِ	يَجِيئَا	
3. m. pl.	جَاءُوا	يَجِيئُونَ	يَجِيئُوا	
3. f. s.	جَاءَتْ	تَجِيءُ	تَجِيءْ	
3. f. pl.	جِئْنَ	يَجِيئْنَ	يَجِيئْنَ	
2. m. s.	جِئْتَ	تَجِيءُ	تَجِيءْ	جِيءْ
2. m.,f. du.	جِئْتُمَا	تَجِيئَانِ	تَجِيئَا	جِيئَا
2. m. pl.	جِئْتُمْ	تَجِيئُونَ	تَجِيئُوا	جِيئُوا

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper- ative
2. f. s.	جِئْتُ	تَجِيئِينَ	تَجِيئِي	جِيئِي
1. s.	جِئْتُ	أَجِيءُ	أَجِيءْ	
	Participle	Verbal Noun		
	جَاءَ (indef.)	مَجِيءٌ		
	الْجَائِي (def.)			

سَاءَ (-) , “to be bad, evil, to hurt, vex”

Active				
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	سَاءَ	يَسُوءُ	يَسُوءْ	
3. m. pl.	سَاءُوا	يَسُوءُونَ	يَسُوءُوا	
3. f. s.	سَاءَتْ	تَسُوءُ	تَسُوءْ	
3. f. pl.	سَاءْنَ	يَسُوءْنَ	يَسُوءْنَ	
2. m. s.	سُوءَ	تَسُوءُ	تَسُوءْ	سُوءْ
2. m. pl.	سُوءُوا	تَسُوءُونَ	تَسُوءُوا	سُوءُوا
2. f. s.	سُوءَتْ	تَسُوءِينَ	تَسُوءِي	سُوءِي
	Participle	Verbal Noun		
	سَاءٍ (indef.)	سُوءٌ		
	السَّائِي (def.)			

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m. s.	سِيءَ	يُسَاءُ

آبَ (أَبَ) , "to return"

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	آبَ	يُؤْبِ	يُؤْبِ	
3. m. pl.	آبُوا	يُؤْبُوا	يُؤْبُوا	
3. f. s.	آبَتْ	تُؤْبِ	تُؤْبِ	
3. f. pl.	آبْنَ	يُؤْبْنَ	يُؤْبْنَ	
2. m. s.	أَبَتْ	تُؤْبِ	تُؤْبِ	أَبْ
2. m. pl.	أَبْتُمْ	تُؤْبُوا	تُؤْبُوا	أُؤْبُوا
2. f. s.	أَبَتْ	تُؤْبِينَ	تُؤْبِي	أُؤْبِي
2. f. pl.	أَبْتْنَ	تُؤْبْنَ	تُؤْبْنَ	أُؤْبْنَ
1. s.	أَبْتُ	أُؤْبِ	أُؤْبِ	

Participle

آبٍ

Verbal Noun

إِيَابٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m. s.	إِيِبَ	يُؤَابُ

أَتَى (-), "to come"

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	أَتَى	يَأْتِي	يَأْتِ	
3. m. pl.	أَتَوْا	يَأْتُونَ	يَأْتُوا	
3. f. s.	أَتَتْ	تَأْتِي	تَأْتِ	
3. f. pl.	أَتَيْنَ	يَأْتِينَ	يَأْتِينَ	
2. m. s.	أَتَيْتَ	تَأْتِي	تَأْتِ	إِيتِ
2. m. pl.	أَتَيْتُمْ	تَأْتُونَ	تَأْتُوا	إِيتُوا
2. f. s.	أَتَيْتِ	تَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِي	إِيتِي
2. f. pl.	أَتَيْتُنَّ	تَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِينَ	إِيتِينَ
1. s.	أَتَيْتُ	آتِي	آتِ	

Participle

Verbal Noun

آت

إِتْيَانٌ

(indef.)

الْآتِي

(def.)

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m. s.	أُتِيَ	يُؤْتَى

وَقَى (-) , “to protect”

Person	Perfect	<u>Active</u>		
		Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	وَقَى	يَقِي	يَقِ	
3. m. pl.	وَقَوْا	يَقُون	يَقُوا	
3. f. s.	وَقَتْ	تَقِي	تَقِ	
3. f. pl.	وَقَيْنَ	يَقِينَ	يَقِينَ	
2. m. s.	وَقَيْتَ	تَقِي	تَقِ	قِ
2. m. pl.	وَقَيْتُمْ	تَقُونَ	تَقُوا	قُوا
2. f. s.	وَقَيْتِ	تَقِينَ	تَقِي	قِي
2. f. pl.	وَقَيْتُنَّ	تَقِينَ	تَقِينَ	قِينَ
1. s.	وَقَيْتُ	أَقِي	أَقِ	

Participle

وَاقٍ
(indef.)
الوَاقِي
(def.)

Verbal Noun

وَقَايَةٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m. s.	وُقِيَ	يُوقَى

Participle

مَوْقِيٌّ

نَوَى (-) , “to intend”

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	نَوَى	يَنْوِي	يَنْوِ	
3. m. du.	نَوَا	يَنْوِيَانِ	يَنْوِيَا	
3. m. pl.	نَوَوْا	يَنْوُونِ	يَنْوُوا	
3. f. s.	نَوَتْ	تَنْوِي	تَنْوِ	
3. f. du.	نَوَتَا	تَنْوِيَانِ	تَنْوِيَا	
3. f. pl.	نَوَيْنَ	تَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِينَ	
2. m. s.	نَوَيْتَ	تَنْوِي	تَنْوِ	اِنْوِ
2. m., f. du.	نَوَيْتُمَا	تَنْوِيَانِ	تَنْوِيَا	اِنْوِيَا
2. m. pl.	نَوَيْتُمْ	تَنْوُونِ	تَنْوُوا	اِنْوُوا
2. f. s.	نَوَيْتِ	تَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِي	اِنْوِي
2. f. pl.	نَوَيْتُنَّ	تَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِينَ	اِنْوِينَ
1. s.	نَوَيْتُ	اَنْوِي	اَنْوِ	

Participle

Verbal Noun

نَاوٍ

نِيَّةٌ

(indef.)

النَّاوِي

(def.)

<u>Passive</u>		
Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m. s.	نُويَ	يُنَوَى
	Participle	
	مُنَوًى	

حَيَّ or حَيًّا (يَحْيَا), "to live"

<u>Active</u>				
Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	حَيَّيَ (حَيَّ)	يَحْيَا	يَحْيَ	
3. m. pl.	حَيُّوا	يَحْيَوْنَ	يَحْيُوا	
3. f. s.	حَيَّتْ (حَيَّتْ)	تَحْيَا	تَحْيَ	
3. f. pl.	حَيَّيْنَ	يَحْيَيْنَ	يَحْيَيْنَ	
2. m. s.	حَيَّيْتَ	تَحْيَا	تَحْيَ	إِحْيَ
2. m. pl.	حَيَّيْتُمْ	تَحْيَوْنَ	تَحْيُوا	إِحْيُوا
2. f. s.	حَيَّيْتُ	تَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيِي	إِحْيِي
2. f. pl.	حَيَّيْتُنَّ	تَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيَيْنَ	إِحْيَيْنَ
	Participle	Verbal Noun		
	(not used)	حَيَاةٌ		

Note: the active participle of حَيَّيَ is not found. Instead the adjective حَيٌّ, حَيَّةٌ, "alive", "living", is used.

Derived Forms of Doubly Weak Verbs

Form	Active						
	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative	Verbal Noun	Participle	Def. Participle
II	أَيَّدَ	يُؤَيِّدُ	يُؤَيِّدْ	أَيِّدْ	تَأْيِيدٌ	مُؤَيِّدٌ	أَلْمُؤَيِّدُ
	To support						
	أَسَوَّى	يُسَوِّي	يُسَوِّ	سَوِّ	تَسْوِيَةٌ	مُسَوِّ	أَلْمُسَوِّي
	To level						
III	أَتَى بـ	يُؤَاتِي	يُؤَاتِ	أَتِ	مُؤَاتَاةٌ	مُؤَاتٍ	أَلْمُؤَاتِي
	To offer						
IV	أَضَاءَ	يُضِيءُ	يُضِئْ	أُضِئْ	إِضَاءَةٌ	مُضِئٌ	أَلْمُضِئُ
	To light, illuminate						
	أَحْيَا	يُحْيِي	يُحِئْ	أُحِئْ	إِحْيَاءٌ	مُحِئٌ	أَلْمُحْيِي
	To give life to, revive						
V	تَوَلَّى	يَتَوَلَّى	يَتَوَلَّ	تَوَلَّ	تَوَلٍّ	مُتَوَلٍّ	أَلْمُتَوَلِّي
	To undertake						
	تَوَالَى	يَتَوَالَى	يَتَوَالَ	تَوَالَ	تَوَالٍ	مُتَوَالٍ	أَلْمُتَوَالِي
	To follow in succession						
VII	انْزَوَى	يَنْزَوِي	يَنْزَوْ	انْزَوْ	انْزَوَاءٌ	مَنْزَوْ	أَلْمَنْزَوِي
	To retire, withdraw						
VIII	اتَّقَى	يَتَّقِي	يَتَّقِ	اتَّقِ	اتِّقَاءٌ	مُتَّقٍ	أَلْمُتَّقِي
	To be pious, godfearing						
X	اِسْتَوَلَى	يَسْتَوِلِي	يَسْتَوِلْ	اِسْتَوِلْ	اِسْتِيلَاءٌ	مُسْتَوِلٌ	أَلْمُسْتَوِلِي
	To take possession of						

Passive

Form	Perfect	Imperfect	Participle
II	أُيِّدَ	يُؤَيِّدُ	مُؤَيِّدٌ
	سُويَ	يُسويَ	مُسَوٍّ
III	أُوتِيَ	يُؤَاتِي	مُؤَاتٍ
IV	أُضِيَ	يُضَاءُ	مُضَاءٌ
	أُحْيِيَ	يُحْيَا	مُحْيٍ
V	تُؤَلَّى	يُتَوَلَّى	مُتَوَلٍّ
VI	no common examples to be found		
VII	«	«	« « «
VIII	أُتَّقِيَ	يُتَّقَى	مُتَّقٍ
X	أُسْتَوَلَّى	يُسْتَوَلَّى	مُسْتَوَلٍّ

رَأَى, "to see"

The common verb رَأَى (imperfect يَرَى) is abnormal in that it drops its hamza in the imperfect of the First Form and in both perfect and imperfect of Form IV. It has no other irregularity.

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative (rarely used)
3. m. s.	رَأَى	يَرَى	يَرِ	
3. m. du.	رَأَيَا	يَرَيَانِ	يَرِيَا	
3. m. pl.	رَأَوْا	يَرَوْنَ	يَرَوْا	

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Jussive	Imperative (rarely used)
3. f. s.	رَأَتْ	تَرَى	تَرِ	
3. f. pl.	رَأَيْنَ	يَرَيْنَ	يَرَيْنَ	
2. m. s.	رَأَيْتَ	تَرَى	تَرِ	(رَ)
2. m. du.	رَأَيْتُمَا	تَرَيَانِ	تَرِيَا	(رَيَا)
2. m. pl.	رَأَيْتُمْ	تَرَوْنَ	تَرَوْا	(رَوْا)
2. f. s.	رَأَيْتِ	تَرِينَ	تَرِيْ	(رِيْ)
2. f. du.	رَأَيْتُمَا	تَرَيَانِ	تَرِيَا	(رَيَا)
2. f. pl.	رَأَيْتُنَّ	تَرِينَ	تَرِينَ	(رِينَ)
1. m. & f. s.	رَأَيْتُ	أَرَى	أَرِ	

Participle

Def. Partic.

Verbal Noun

رَاءٍ

الرَّائِي

رُؤْيَةٌ

Passive

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
3. m. s.	رُئِيَ	يُرَى
3. m. du.	رُئِيَا	يُرَيَانِ
3. m. pl.	رُئُوا	يُرَوْنَ
3. f. s.	رُئِيَتْ	تُرَى
3. f. pl.	رُئِينَ	يُرِينَ

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.
2. m. s.	رُئِيتَ	تَرَى
2. m. pl.	رُئِيتُمْ	تَرَوْنَ
2. f. s.	رُئِيتِ	تَرِينَ
2. f. pl.	رُئِيتِنَّ	تَرَيْنَ

Participle

مَرْنِي

أَرَى Form IV, "to show" (transitive)

Person	Perfect	Imper- fect	Imper- ative	Act. Part.	Pass. Part.	Verbal Noun
3. m. s.	أَرَى	يُرِي	أَرِ	مُرٍ	مُرًى	إِرَاعَةٌ

CHAPTER XXXII

(Word List, Section 6)

EXERCISE 32:

Doubly Weak Verbs

<p>إِحتَوَى عَلَى to contain</p> <p>أَضَاءَ to light; kindle</p> <p>تَحَيَّاهُ to greet</p> <p>شَكَاهُ (و) مِنْ شَكَايَةٍ to complain of</p> <p>تَعَالِ come! (imper- ative m. s.)</p>	<p>تَعَرَّضَ لِـ to impede, obstruct</p> <p>آبَ . يَوُوبُ . إِيَابَ to return</p> <p>طَوَى (-) . طَيَّ to fold</p> <p>اِنْتَخَبَ to elect</p> <p>اِسْتَوَى عَلَى to take pos- session of</p>
--	--

لَا يَشَاءُ الْقُنْصُلُ أَنْ يُبْدِيَ رَأْيَهُ فِي الْمَوْضُوعِ إِلَّا بَعْدَ إِيَابِهِ
مِنْ بِلَادِهِ — طَوُّوا الْأَوْرَاقَ وَالْقَوَا بِهَا بَيْضَاءَ فِي الصُّنْدُوقِ
لأنَّهُمْ يَنْوُونَ أَنْ يَقَاطِعُوا إِلَّا نِتَخَابَاتٍ — اِسْتَرَدَّتْ قُوَّاتُنَا كُلَّ
مَا اِسْتَوَى عَلَيْهِ الْعَدُوُّ مِنْ أَرْضٍ دَاخِلِ الْخُدُودِ — جِئْتُ
الْيَوْمَ مُتَأَخِّرَةً عَنِ الْمِيعَادِ ، قَالِمَرْجُوًّا إِلَّا تَجِيئِي مُتَأَخِّرَةً نَهَارَ
غَدٍ — بِالرُّغْمِ مِنَ الْعُقَبَاتِ الَّتِي تَعَرَّضْتُ لِلْمُحَادَثَاتِ تَمَكَّنَ
الْطَّرَفَانِ مِنْ أَنْ يُسَوِّيَا الْمَشَاكِلَ تَسْوِيَةً تَامَّةً — اِحتَوَتْ
مُحَاضَرَتُهُ الَّتِي أَلْقَاهَا فِي الْجُمُعَةِ عَلَى نِقَاطٍ تُؤَيِّدُ خَصْمَهُ وَتُضِرُّ
بِشَرَفِ وَطَنِهِ — تَأْتِينَا مَحَطَّةُ الْإِذَاعَةِ هَذِهِ السَّنَةِ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ

بِرَامِجَ جَدِيدَةٍ عَلَى عَكْسِ مَا كَانَتْ تَفْعَلُ السَّنَةُ الْمَاضِيَةَ —
نَصَحَهُ الطَّبِيبُ بِالْمَشْيِ يَوْمِيًّا مَسَافَةً مِائَتَيْنِ ذَهَابًا وَإِيَابًا لِتَقْوِيَةِ
جِسْمِهِ — أَضْيَاءُ الْغُرْفَةِ لِأَنَّنَا لَا نَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ نَرَى جَيِّدًا —
نُحْيِيكُمْ أَجْمَلَ تَحِيَّةٍ وَنَسْأَلُ اللَّهَ أَنْ نَرَاكُمْ فِي الْوَطَنِ الْعَزِيزِ
بَعْدَ فِتْرَةٍ قَصِيرَةٍ — لَمْ أَرَأْ أَبَدًا رَجُلًا أَكْثَرَ حِمَاقَةً مِنَ الْخَفِيرِ
الَّذِي كَانَ يَحْرُسُ الْمَعْمَلَ الْبَارِحَ — قُلْ لِأَخِيكَ إِنِّي سَأَتِي
غَدًا إِلَى الْمُسْتَشْفَى لِأَزُورَهُ — تَعَالَوْا إِلَيْنَا فِي أَيِّ وَقْتٍ
تَشَاوُونَ .

We are trying to raise the standard of living in our country. You must use your troops to strengthen the defences of the police post. I did not see any British tourists at the Exhibition. His health was not strong enough to bear the difficulties of life on the coastal plain, so his doctors advised him to come to the mountains and live in this village. The details of our proposals are as follows. We intend to support the principles of justice and freedom. God willing, all the parties of the right will support us. We shall welcome your friend the singer when she comes to broadcast, provided that she keeps her promise and does not complain about her fee. Tell the barber to come at the appointed time; let him bring his glasses with him.

CHAPTER XXXIII

Quadriliteral Verbs

Quadriliteral verbs are those that have four radicals. With slight exceptions their vowel patterns follow those of Forms II, V, and X of trilateral verbs.

Quadriliteral Form I

تَرْجَمَ , "to translate"

Active

Person	Perfect	Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	تَرْجَمَ	يُتَرْجَمُ	يُتَرْجَمَ	يُتَرْجَمْ	
3. f. s.	تَرْجَمَتْ	تُتَرْجَمُ	تُتَرْجَمَ	تُتَرْجَمْ	
2. m. s.	تَرْجَمْتَ	تُتَرْجِمُ	تُتَرْجِمَ	تُتَرْجِمْ	تَرْجِمْ
2. m. pl.	تَرْجَمْتُمْ	تُتَرْجِمُونَ	تُتَرْجِمُوا	تُتَرْجِمُوا	تَرْجِمُوا
1. s.	تَرْجَمْتُ	أُتَرْجِمُ	أُتَرْجِمَ	أُتَرْجِمْ	
	Participle مُتَرْجِمٌ		Verbal Noun تَرْجِمَةٌ		

Passive

Person	Perfect	Imperfect
3. m. s.	تُرْجِمَ	يُتَرْجَمُ
etc.	etc.	etc.

Participle

مُتَرْجِمٌ

A common pattern of these First Form quadrilateral verbs is the onomatopoeic type in which the first two radicals are repeated, e.g. وَسَّوَسَ , “to whisper (evil)”.

Quadrilateral Form II

تَبَعَثَ , “to be scattered”

Person	Perfect	Active			
		Impf. Indic.	Sub-junctive	Jussive	Imperative
3. m. s.	تَبَعَثَ	يَتَبَعَثُ	يَتَبَعَثَ	يَتَبَعَثْ	
3. f. s.	تَبَعَثَتْ	تَتَبَعَثُ	تَتَبَعَثَ	تَتَبَعَثْ	
2. m. s.	تَبَعَثْتَ	تَتَبَعَثُ	تَتَبَعَثَ	تَتَبَعَثْ	تَبَعَثْ
2. f. s.	تَبَعَثْتِ	تَتَبَعَثِينَ	تَتَبَعَثِي	تَتَبَعَثِي	تَبَعَثِي
1. s.	تَبَعَثْتُ	أَتَبَعَثُ	أَتَبَعَثَ	أَتَبَعَثْ	

Participle

مَتَبَعِثٌ

Verbal Noun

تَبَعِثٌ

Participle

مَتَبَعِثٌ

No passives of increased forms of quadrilateral verbs exist.

Quadriliteral Form III

إِظْمَأَنَّ , “to feel at ease, tranquil”

Person	Perfect	Active			
		Impf. Indic.	Sub- junctive	Jussive	Imper- ative
3. m. s.	إِطْمَأَنَّ	يَظْمِئُ	يَظْمِئَ	يَظْمِئْ	
3. f. s.	إِطْمَأَنْتِ	تَظْمِئُ	تَظْمِئَ	تَظْمِئْ	
2. m. s.	إِطْمَأَنْتَ	تَظْمِئُ	تَظْمِئَ	تَظْمِئْ	إِظْمِئْ
2. m. pl.	إِطْمَأَنْتُمْ	تَظْمِئُونَ	تَظْمِئُوا	تَظْمِئُوا	إِظْمِئُوا
2. f. s.	إِطْمَأَنْتِ	تَظْمِئِينَ	تَظْمِئِي	تَظْمِئِي	إِظْمِئِي
2. f. pl.	إِطْمَأَنْتُنَّ	تَظْمِئِينَ	تَظْمِئِينَ	تَظْمِئِينَ	إِظْمِئِينَ
	Participle	Verbal Noun			
	مُظْمِئٌ	إِظْمِئَانٌ			

It will be seen that this resembles the conjugation of a doubled verb.

There is also a Fourth Form on the pattern أَفْعَلَّ , but there are no words of this Form in common use (a typical example is إِحْوَنَصَلَ , “to puff out the crop”).

CHAPTER XXXIII

(Word List, Section 6)

EXERCISES 33 :

Quadriliteral Verbs

بَرَّهَنَ to prove	جُنَيْهَ ج ات pound (sterling)
سَيَّطَرَ to rule over, dominate, control	بَرَّطَلَ to bribe
إِطْمَأَنَّ (إِلَى) to feel confident, secure (in)	بَرَّطِيلَ ج بَرَّاطِيلُ bribe
تَجَمَّهَرَ to gather, flock together	تَزَلَّزَلَ to shake (intrans.)
زَقَزَقَ to chirp	طَمَأَنَّ (عَنْ) to calm, appease reassure (about)
دَحْرَجَ to roll, roll down (trans.)	تَفَلَّسَفَ to philosophise
تَغَلَّغَلَ (فِي) to penetrate, meddle (in)	تَعَرَّقَلَ to be hindered, impeded
تَقَهَّرَ to retreat, with- draw, deterior- ate	ارْتَجَفَ (مِنْ) to shudder, shiver (because of)
تَدَهَّوَرَ to sink, slump, be overthrown	تَزَعَزَعَ to shake, be convulsed
تَزَحَّزَحَ to budge (intrans.)	إِشْمَازَ مِنْ to detest, feel disgust at

تَجَمَّهَرَ النَّاسُ أَمَامَ الْمُسْتَشْفَى الْعَسْكَرِيِّ فَتَعَرَّقَلَ السَّيْرُ وَتَوَقَّفَتْ
حَرَكَهُ الْمُرُورِ — رَفَعْتُ رَأْسِي إِلَى أَعْلَى عِنْدَمَا سَمِعْتُ عُصْفُورًا
يُزَقْزِقُ عَلَى فِرْعِ الشَّجَرَةِ — أَثْبَتَ الرِّجَالُ دَحْرَجُوا الْحِجَارَةَ

إِلَى أَسْفَلَ لِكَيْ تَمْنَعُوا الدَّوْرِيَّةَ مِنَ الْوُصُولِ إِلَى مَوْقِعِنَا —
تَزَلَّزَتِ الْأَرْضُ فَخَافَ النَّاسُ خَوْفًا شَدِيدًا — إِنَّ الْبَاعِثَ
عَلَى تَزَعُّعِ الْأَوْضَاعِ السِّيَاسِيَّةِ فِي الْبِلَادِ هُوَ تَغْلُّلُ الْعُنَاصِرِ
الشُّيُوعِيَّةِ فِي مُنْظَمَاتِ الْعُمَالِ — لَقَدْ بَرَهَنْتِ الْبَعْثَةُ الَّتِي
حَضَرَتْ مُؤْتَمَرَ الْأَطِبَّاءِ بِأَنَّهَا جَدِيرَةٌ بِكُلِّ تَقْدِيرٍ — حَاوَلَ
السَّجَنَاءُ أَنْ يُبْرِطُوا الْخَفِيرَ بِمَبْلَغِ خَمْسَةِ جُنَيْهَاتٍ لِكَيْ يَسْمَحَ
لَهُمْ بِمُقَابَلَةِ مُحَامِيهِمْ خَارِجَ السَّجْنِ — لَا نَطْمِئِنُّ إِلَى الْمُعَاهَدَةِ
الَّتِي سَيُجْرَى التَّوْقِيعُ عَلَيْهَا فِي الْبَرْلَمَانِ غَدًا — إِنَّ الطُّلَّابَ
مُشْتَمِزُونَ مِنَ الْمُعَامَلَةِ الرَّدِيئَةِ الَّتِي يَلْقَوْنَهَا مِنْ بَعْضِ الْأَسَاتِذَةِ.

The temperature was 25° below zero, and we shivered because of the severe cold and were unable to carry on driving. He began to whisper to me so that nobody else could hear us. Translate (f. s.) these few sentences, please. Philosophising is useless in such circumstances. Please reassure her that the operation performed on her sister's husband was successful, and that his life is in no danger. Because of the general withdrawal the commander was unable to control the situation and was obliged to surrender. In spite of the fact that the government decided to use troops as well as propaganda, the rebels would not budge: on the contrary, it was the government's position that deteriorated, the people being disgusted at its behaviour.

CHAPTER XXXIV

The Sisters of كَانَ ; Some Useful Verbs and Auxiliaries

The Sisters of كَانَ .

The following common verbs, known as sisters of كَانَ , share with that verb the characteristic that their predicate is put into the accusative :

To become	صَارَ
To become (or to be in the morning)	أَصْبَحَ
To become (or to be in the evening)	أَمْسَى
To become (or to pass the night)	بَاتَ
To remain	بَقِيَ
To remain	ظَلَّ
To last	دَامَ
As long as, since	مَا دَامَ
Not to be (see paragraphs 3-7 below)	لَيْسَ
To be no longer (see paragraph 8 below)	مَا عَادَ
To continue, still to be (see paragraph 9 below)	مَا زَالَ

Note: **عَادَ** and **زَالَ** on their own mean “to last”, “to return”, and “to cease to be” respectively. **عَادَ** followed by the imperfect means “to resume” or “to continue”, e.g.

They resumed searching
for him in the afternoon **عَادُوا يُفَتِّشُونَ عَنْهُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ**

2. As well as being followed by a predicate in the accusative, sisters of **كَانَ** may be followed by a verb in the imperfect, e.g.

Since he is poor we will help him **مَا دَامَ فَقِيرًا نُسَاعِدُهُ**
So long as he asks us for
help we will give it him **مَا دَامَ يَطْلُبُ إِلَيْنَا
الْمُسَاعَدَةَ نُقَدِّمُهَا لَهُ**

لَيْسَ .

3. The verb **لَيْسَ**, “not to be”, is conjugated like a perfect, but its meaning is present :

He/it is not ugly **لَيْسَ قَبِيحًا**
She/it is not beautiful **لَيْسَتْ جَمِيلَةً**
You are not ready **لَسْتَ مُسْتَعِدًّا**
etc.

4. It may take its predicate either in the accusative or, in the genitive after **بِ**, e.g.

You are not pleased **لَسْتُمْ مَسْرُورِينَ**
They are not soldiers **لَيْسُوا بِجُنُودٍ**

5. "There is no....." may be translated **لَيْسَ مِنْ**, e.g.

There is no professor who
knows that better than I

لَيْسَ مِنْ أَسْتَاذٍ يَعْرِفُ
ذَلِكَ أَحْسَنَ مِنِّي

6. **لَيْسَ** is commonly used to express the negative of the verb
"to have", e.g.

We have no bananas

لَيْسَ عِنْدَنَا مَوْزٌ

The students have no
holiday today

لَيْسَ لِلتَّلَامِيذِ فُرْصَةٌ الْيَوْمَ

Note from the second example above that when a feminine subject in a verbal sentence does not immediately follow its verb, the latter may be masculine (c.f. Chapter II, paragraph 10). This practice is seldom followed in modern Arabic except with **لَيْسَ** and in some idioms.

7. **لَيْسَ** is also used instead of **لَا** to make the negative of the imperfect, but is more intensive than **لَا**, e.g.

She has no idea what she's doing

لَيْسَتْ تَعْرِفُ مَا تَعْمَلُ

مَا عَادَ .

8. The English "no longer" or "not again" is expressed by **مَا عَادَ**, e.g.

He no longer lives
in Beirut

مَا عَادَ يَسْكُنُ
لَمْ يَعُدْ يَسْكُنُ } فِي بَيْرُوتَ

She will no longer teach us	لَنْ تَعُودَ تُعَلِّمُنَا
Do not do that again	لَا تَعُدْ تَعْمَلُ ذَلِكَ
He is no longer rich	مَا عَادَ } غَنِيًّا لَمْ يَعُدْ }

مَا زَالَ .

9. The English "still" may be expressed by مَا زَالَ , which is used in the same ways as مَا عَادَ , e. g.

He is still sad	مَا زَالَ (لَمْ يَزَلْ) حَزِينًا
He still lives in Beirut	لَا يَزَالُ يَسْكُنُ فِي بَيْرُوتَ
We were still at home	كُنَّا لَا نَزَالُ فِي الْبَيْتِ

10. Synonyms of مَا زَالَ , used in the same way and also sisters of كَانَ , are مَا أَفْنَكَ , مَا فَتِيَ , مَا بَرَحَ .

Useful Auxiliary Verbs.

أَعَادَ .

11. أَعَادَ , followed by a defined verbal noun in the accusative, means "to do again", and often does the work of the English prefix "re—", e. g.

He wrote his lesson again (or he re-wrote his lesson)	أَعَادَ كِتَابَةَ دَرْسِهِ
They asked me to revise the project	طَلَبُوا مِنِّي إِعَادَةَ النَّظَرِ فِي الْمَشْرُوعِ

كَادَ .

12. كَادَ (ا) is used to express "almost", and in the negative "scarcely, hardly". It is generally followed by the imperfect (occasionally by أَنْ with the subjunctive), e.g.

I almost died of hunger

كَدْتُ أَمُوتُ جُوعاً

Hardly had he left the country when his brother returned

مَا كَادَ يُغَادِرُ الْبِلَادَ حَتَّى عَادَ أَخُوهُ

He will hardly finish what he is doing before sunset

لَا يَكَادُ يُكْمِلُ عَمَلَهُ
قَبْلَ غُرُوبِ الشَّمْسِ

13. مَا إِنَّ with the perfect is also used in the sense of "hardly", "almost", e.g.

Hardly had he left the country when his brother returned

مَا إِنَّ غَادَرَ الْبِلَادَ حَتَّى عَادَ أَخُوهُ

عَسَى .

14. عَسَى , an impersonal indeclinable verb meaning "it may be, perhaps, it is hoped that", is followed mostly by أَنْ and the subjunctive or rarely by the imperfect indicative, e.g.

Perhaps he will come

عَسَى أَنْ يَجِيءَ

Of what use could this possibly be?

مَا عَسَى أَنْ يَنْفَعَهُ هَذَا ؟

15. A pronoun may be attached to عَسَى as a suffix, e.g.

May be she will go

عَسَاهَا أَنْ تَذْهَبَ

I may see you this
afternoon

عَسَانِي أَرَاكُمْ أَلْيَوْمَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ

I trust you are well

عَسَاكُمْ بِخَيْرٍ

. أَوْشَكَ

16. أَوْشَكَ , "to be on the point of", is used personally or impersonally with أَنْ followed by the subjunctive (or sometimes with عَلَى plus a verbal noun), e.g.

The plane was about
to take off

أَوْشَكَتِ الطَّائِرَةُ أَنْ تُقْلِعَ
أَوْشَكَ أَنْ تُقْلِعَ الطَّائِرَةُ

I was on the point of falling

أَوْشَكْتُ أَنْ أَقَعَ

17. But more common than the verb is the phrase عَلَى وَشَكَ followed by a verbal noun or by أَنْ with the subjunctive, e.g.

The workers were about
to strike

كَانَ الْعُمَالُ عَلَى وَشَكَ الْإِضْرَابِ

. طَالَمَا

18. Followed by a verb in the perfect, طَالَمَا means "for a long time, often": followed by a nominal clause or a verb in the imperfect it means "as long as", e.g.

For a long time
imports exceeded
exports

طَالَمَا زَادَتْ الْوَارِدَاتُ عَلَى الصَّادِرَاتِ

As long as your brother is with us we will watch over him طَالَمَا أَخُوكَ عِنْدَنَا نَحْرُسُهُ

As long as you stay here, I shall stay طَالَمَا تَبْقَى هُنَا أَبْقَى أَنَا

“Already”.

19. The English “already” may be expressed by the verb, سَبَقَ ,
e. g.

The Ambassadress had already held a conference
سَبَقَ لِلْسَّفِيرَةِ أَنْ عَقَدَتْ مُؤْتَمَرًا
سَبَقَ أَنْ عَقَدَتِ السَّفِيرَةُ مُؤْتَمَرًا

Impersonal Verbs.

20. In the above two examples, the subject of سَبَقَ is the أَنْ clause (Chapter XVI, paragraph 10). However, some verbs, of which the most common are أَمْكَنَ and وَجَبَ, are used impersonally, e. g.

We ought to read the press daily
يَجِبُ عَلَيْنَا قِرَاءَةَ الصُّحُفِ يَوْمِيًّا

Can you help them?
يُمْكِنُكَ مُسَاعَدَتُهُمْ

“To begin”.

21. In addition to بَدَأَ, a number of other verbs mean in the perfect “to begin”, among the commoner being أَخَذَ (أُ), جَعَلَ (جُ), أَنْطَلَقَ (أُ), and قَامَ (قُ), أَصْبَحَ (أُ), صَارَ (صُ), شَرَعَ (شُ), they are followed by the imperfect, e.g.

He began to laugh at him
أَخَذَ يَضْحَكُ عَلَيْهِ

I began to read the book

جَعَلْتُ أَقْرَأُ الْكِتَابَ

All these verbs are, in this sense, used in the perfect only, and may retain some connexion with their original meaning. It would, for example, be more reasonable to translate "I began to feel sleepy by بَدَأْتُ أَشْعُرُ بِالنَّعَاسِ than to use قُمْتُ or انْطَلَقْتُ .

Intransitive Verbs with Passive Meanings

22. Some intransitive verbs, e.g. صَدَرَ , "to issue", are best translated by an English passive, e.g. "Orders were issued to the generals" صَدَرَتْ الْأَوَامِرُ إِلَى الْقُوَّادِ .

The land was reclaimed

تَمَّ اسْتِرْدَادُ الْأَرَاضِي

The verb زَادَ , "to increase", is either transitive or intransitive, e.g.

The Government increased
the taxes

زَادَتِ الْحُكُومَةُ الضَّرَائِبَ

The cost of living has gone
up lately

زَادَتْ تَكَالِيفُ الْمَعِيشَةِ آخِيراً

EXERCISE 34:

The Sisters of كَانَ ; Some

Useful Verbs and Auxiliaries

هَذَا الْكُرْسِيُّ لَيْسَ مُرِيحًا ، إِيْتَنِي بِآخَرَ جَدِيدٍ مِنَ الْمَخْزَنِ —
لَسْنَا بِمَسْئُولِينَ عَنْ بَيْعِ الْمَطْبُوعَاتِ ، هَذَا مِنْ اخْتِصَاصِ
النَّاشِرِ وَمُديرِ الْمَطْبَعَةِ — لَيْسَ مِنَ الْمَسْمُوحِ بِهِ أَنْ يَدْخُلَ
التِّلْمِيزُ الْجَامِعَةَ وَهُوَ لَمْ يَجْتَزْ بَعْدُ مَرَاحِلَ التَّعْلِيمِ الْإِبْتِدَائِيِّ —
عِنْدَمَا ذَهَبْتُ لِزِيَارَةِ صَدِيقٍ قَدِيمٍ قِيلَ لِي إِنَّهُ لَمْ يَعُدْ يَسْكُنُ
فِي نَفْسِ الْبَلَدَةِ — بَعْدَ أَنْ كَبِرَ لَمْ يَعُدْ يَأْكُلُ كَمَا كَانَ يَفْعَلُ
فِي الْمَاضِي — مَا زَالَ جَدِّي يَمْشِي مَسَافَاتٍ طَوِيلَةً كُلَّ يَوْمٍ
مِنْ بَيْتِهِ إِلَى مَكَانِ عَمَلِهِ — كُنَّا لَا نَزَالُ فِي بُيُوتِنَا عِنْدَمَا
سَمِعْنَا خَبَرَ إِعْلَانِ الْحَرْبِ — لَمْ تَزَلْ تُغْنِي وَقَدْ أُمِسَتْ امْرَأَةٌ
كَبِيرَةً فِي الْعُمُرِ — بَعْدَمَا أَطْلَعَ الْمُعَلِّمُ عَلَى دَرَسِ التِّلْمِيزِ أَمْرَهُ
بِإِعَادَةِ كِتَابَتِهِ — كِدْنَا نَمُوتُ مِنَ الرَّائِحَةِ الرَّدِيئَةِ الَّتِي
أَنْتَشَرَتْ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ — مَا كَادُوا يُشَاهِدُونَنَا حَتَّى اسْتَقْبَلُونَا
اسْتِقْبَالًا حَارًّا — مَا أَنْ أَجْمَعَ الْمُنْدُوبُونَ عَلَى تَأْيِيدِ الْقَرَارِ
حَتَّى أَرْفَعَتِ الْأَصْوَاتُ مِنَ الْخَارِجِ تَصِيحُ فَلْيَحْيِ الْوَطَنُ —

لَا تَكَادُ نِصْفُ سَاعَةٍ تَكْفِي لِتَعْرِفِ الْأَعْضَاءِ بَعْضُهُمْ عَلَى
 بَعْضٍ فَكَيْفَ يَدْعُو إِلَى عَقْدِ جَلْسَةٍ لِمُدَّةِ نِصْفِ سَاعَةٍ فَقَطْ؟
 عَسَى أَنْ يَتَزَوَّجَ الْفَتَى الْفَتَاةَ الَّتِي يُحِبُّهَا — مَا عَسَاهُ أَنْ يَفْعَلَ
 إِذَا تَحَالَفَ أَخُوهُ مَعَ خَصْمِهِ؟ — بَدَأَ رِسَالَتَهُ كَكُلِّ الرِّسَائِلِ
 « عَسَى أَنْ تَكُونُوا فِي أَتَمِّ الصَّحَّةِ » — أَوْشَكَ أَنْ يَبْلُغَ
 مَجْمُوعُ الْمَصَارِيفِ لِبِنَاءِ الْمَسْجِدِ ثَلَاثَ مِئَةِ أَلْفِ جِنِيهِ —
 أَوْشَكَ أَنْ يَقَعَ بَعْدَمَا قَامَ مِنْ فِرَاشِهِ فِي الْمُسْتَشْفَى — غَضِبَ
 الْمَعْلُومُونَ حَتَّى أَصْبَحُوا عَلَى وَشَكِ الْإِضْرَابِ عِنْدَمَا أَعْلَنَ وَزِيرُ
 التَّرْيِيَةِ أَنَّ رَوَاتِبَهُمْ لَنْ تُرْفَعَ — سَوْفَ يَبْقَى فِي الْحُكْمِ
 طَالَمَا هُوَ بِكَامِلِ قُوَاهُ الْعَقْلِيَّةِ — سَبَقَ لِي أَنْ أَخْبَرْتُهُمْ عَنْ
 الْإِضْطِرَّاتِ فِي الْبِلَادِ — بَعْدَمَا بَدَأَ بِتَمْثِيلِ دَوْرِهِ أَخَذَ
 الْجَمِيعُ يَضْحَكُونَ عَلَيْهِ — قَامَ الْوَزِيرُ بِدَرْسِ الْمَشَارِيعِ
 الْجَدِيدَةِ بَعْدَ عَوْدَتِهِ مِنْ فُرْصَتِهِ — يَشْرَعُ سُكَّانُ الْجِبَالِ
 بِاسْتِئْجَارِ الْبُيُوتِ فِي الْمَدْنِ عِنْدَ نِهَآيَةِ فَصْلِ الصَّيْفِ .

The first stage of constructing the High Dam is no easier than the second one. The commander has no desire to continue the operations which he began. We hope that the patrol will have found the aircraft that crashed. No sooner did the editor finish his story than the publisher took it to the press. Hardly had we fallen asleep when the watchman came and woke us up. Nearly all the engineers' operations were exposed to danger. The student began to

speaking the Arabic language like a native (one of its sons) after studying it for six months. The watchman seized the thief and began to shout, "Come! (m. pl.) Help me!" The inhabitants of Beirut began renting houses in the mountainous regions at the beginning of last summer. We shall fight such things as long as we live. I was on the point of forgetting the carpets I had left at the Customs. It is hoped that they will soon begin to fight illiteracy in the country. Hardly had the enemy entered the country when our troops forced them to halt. He was still unable to read Arabic well, although he was on the point of leaving the university.

CHAPTER XXXV

Exclamations : Wishes

Sentences such as “How pretty she is”, “How kind they are!” are generally rendered in Arabic by using the 3rd person masc. sing. of the Fourth Form verb with مَا followed by an accusative, e.g. مَا أَجْمَلَ الْبِنْتَ , مَا أَلْطَفَهُمْ . This construction cannot be used where the adjective is of the colour-and-defect type. In these cases, and where the word after “how” is an adverb, the sentence must be changed, e.g.

How black it is!

مَا أَشَدَّ سَوَادَهُ

How quickly they walk!

مَا أَسْرَعَ مَشْيَهُمْ

These expressions may be given a past meaning by inserting كَانَ after مَا , e.g.

How quickly they walked

مَا كَانَ أَسْرَعَ مَشْيَهُمْ

2. Another way of constructing such sentences is to prefix — مَا أَشَدَّ مَا (or another appropriate verb) to a sentence, e.g.

How he cries!

مَا أَشَدَّ مَا يَبْكِي

What a lot of nonsense
he talked !

مَا أَكْثَرَ مَا نَطَقَ بِكَلَامٍ فَارِغٍ

How quickly she used to run !

مَا أَسْرَعَ مَا كَانَتْ تَرْكُضُ

3. "How" or "how many", etc., in an exclamatory sense may also be rendered by starting a sentence with كَمْ . This كَمْ is normally followed by (a) a nominal sentence, (b) مِنْ plus an indefinite singular or plural noun (sometimes the مِنْ is understood) or (c) a verb in the imperfect, e. g.

How weak she is! كَمْ هِيَ ضَعِيفَةٌ !

How many horses have I bet on and never won a penny! كَمْ (مِنْ) حِصَانٍ رَأَيْتُ عَلَيْهِ وَلَمْ أَكْسَبْ فِلْسًا !

How happy I shall be to see you! كَمْ أَكُونُ سَعِيدًا لَدَى رُؤْيَاكَ !

4. "What" in an exclamatory sense may be rendered by مِنْ , e.g. ... يَا لَـ

What a liar, he is! يَا لَهُ مِنْ كَذَابٍ !

What a brave man the brigadier is! يَا لِلزَّعِيمِ مِنْ رَجُلٍ شَجَاعٍ !

Wishes.

5. Wishes may be expressed by the perfect tense. The negative is formed by using لَا , e.g.

God have mercy on him! رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ !

God forbid! لَا سَمَحَ اللَّهُ !

EXERCISE 35:

Exclamations; Wishes

مَا أَجْمَلَ مَنْظَرَ السُّهُولِ فِي فَصْلِ الرَّبِيعِ! — مَا أَشَدَّ أَهْمِيَّةَ
 الْمَعَارِضِ لِتِجَارَةِ الْبِلَادِ وَصِنَاعَتِهَا! — كَمْ مِنْ سَنَةٍ حَارَبَ
 الْفَرَنْسِيُّونَ الْجَزَائِرِيِّينَ وَلَمْ يَسْتَسْلِمُوا هُؤُلَاءِ! — كَمْ مَرَّةً
 اعْتَرَضْتُ عَلَى تَقْدِيمِكَ الْإِسْتِغَاثَةَ مِنَ الْعَمَلِ! — كَمْ هِيَ وَثِيقَةُ
 رَوَابِطِ الصَّدَاقَةِ بَيْنَ لُبْنَانَ وَالْبِلَادِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ الْأُخْرَى! — كَمْ
 نَحْنُ مُعْتَرِفُونَ بِفَضْلِكُمْ عَلَيْنَا، يَا إِخْوَانُ! — يَا لَهُ مِنْ تَغْيِيرِ
 جَرَى عَلَى التَّعْلِيمِ وَأَسَالِيهِ! — يَا لِلْمُسْتَوْصِفِ هَذَا مِنْ بِنَاءِ
 ضَنْمٍ! — يَا لَكُمْ مِنْ رِجَالٍ حُمُقٍ! — أَيُّهَا الْأُمَمَاتُ، كَمْ
 أَنْتُنَّ فَرِحَاتُ بِنَجَاحِ أَوْلَادِكُنَّ! — كَمْ سُؤَالَ وَجَّهَتْ إِلَيْهِ
 وَلَمْ يُعْطِ جَوَابًا! — مَا أَعْلَى مَا هُوَ عَلَيْهِ مُسْتَوَى مَعِيشَتِهِمْ! —
 مَا كَانَ أَفْصَحَ لِسَانَ الْمَحَاضِرِ! — مَا أَشْرَفَ مَا يُعَامِلُ الْقَائِدُ
 جُنُودَهُ! — مَا أَجْدَرَكُمْ بِالْإِسْتِغْنَاءِ عَنْ مُسَاعَدَتِهِمْ! — مَا أَشَدَّ
 مَا كُنْتُمْ تُعَلِّقُونَ أَهْمِيَّةً عَلَى إِنْشَاءِ جَمْعِيَّةٍ لِلْسَيِّدَاتِ! — مَا أَقَلَّ
 مَا تَكُونِينَ قَادِرَةً عَلَى الْقِيَامِ بِوَجِبَاتِكِ إِذَا لَمْ تَسْتَرْجِحِي

الْيَوْمَ! — مَا أَعْظَمَ مَا بَدَلُوا مِنْ مَسَاعٍ لِتَحْسِينِ الطُّرُقِ
الْعُمُومِيَّةِ! — يَا لَأَحْمَدَ مِنْ سِيَاسِيٍّ عَظِيمٍ! — طَالَمَا شَرَّفْتُمُونَا
بِزِيَارَتِكُمْ هَذَا الْمَعْبَدَ!

How many (كَمْ مِنْ) articles he translated into English! How many chances (opportunities) you (m.s.) missed to obtain a rank worthy of your abilities. For a long time I sent letters to you but you did not reply! How grateful we are to you for your kindness to us when we were with you and for the assistance you offered us without hesitation! What intelligent men they are who know exactly what to do in order to raise the standard of living amongst their people! What a clever photographer your neighbour is! How bad the weather was yesterday and how beautiful it is today! What (يَا لَهَا مِنْ) bad consequences resulted from the weakness of electric power.

APPENDIX A

The Feminine

The following types of nouns are feminine in Arabic :

(a) Nouns ending in ة (ta marbuta) other than those applying specifically to males, e.g.

مَلِكَةٌ , “queen” (but خَلِيفَةٌ , “caliph”, masculine).

(b) Nouns ending in ي or ا , where this is not one of their radicals, e.g.

ذِكْرَى , “memory” and الدُّنْيَا , “the world”.

(c) Nouns ending in اء , where the hamza is not one of their radicals, e.g.

صَحْرَاءُ , “desert”.

(d) Nouns that can only refer to females, e.g.

أُمُّ , “mother”.

(e) Most proper names of countries, e.g.

مِصْرُ , “Egypt”. (Common exceptions are لُبْنَانُ , العِرَاقُ , الحِجَازُ).

(f) Many nouns referring to parts of the body that occur in pairs, e. g.

يَدٌ , “hand”.

2. A number of nouns are feminine though they cannot be classified by type. The most common are :

الشَّمْسُ	the sun	أَرْضُ	earth, ground, floor
عَصَا	staff	بَيْتُ	well
فَأْسُ	axe	حَرْبُ	war
الْفِرْدَوْسُ	Paradise	خَمْرُ	wine
كَأْسُ	cup	دَلْوُ	bucket
مُوسَى	razor	دَارُ	house
نَارُ	fire	رَحَى	mill
نَعْلُ	sole	رِيحُ	wind
نَفْسُ soul			

3. A large number of nouns may be either masculine or feminine. Common examples are :

حَالُ	state, condition
سُوقُ	market
طَرِيقُ	road, way

APPENDIX B

Broken Plurals

The following are the main broken plural forms, in the order given in Wright's Arabic Grammar :

1.	فَعْلٌ	e. g.	صَوْرٌ	from	صُورَةٌ
2.	فُعْلٌ	e. g.	خَمْرٌ	from	أَخْمَرٌ
3.	فُعْلٌ	e. g.	مَدَنٌ	from	مَدِينَةٌ
4.	فِعْلٌ	e. g.	مِلَلٌ	from	مِلَّةٌ
5.	فِعَالٌ	e. g.	صِغَارٌ	from	صَغِيرٌ
6.	فُعُولٌ	e. g.	جُيُوشٌ	from	جَيْشٌ
7.	فَعْلٌ	e. g.	خُضْعٌ	from	خَاضِعٌ
8.	فَعَالٌ	e. g.	نَوَابٌ	from	نَائِبٌ
9.	فَعَلَةٌ	e. g.	كُتَبَةٌ	from	كَاتِبٌ
10.	فَعَلَةٌ	e. g.	قُضَاةٌ	from	قَاضٍ
11.	فَعَلَةٌ	e. g.	فَيْلَةٌ	from	فِيلٌ
12.	فَعَلَةٌ	e. g.	إِخْوَةٌ	from	أَخٌ
13.	أَفْعُلٌ	e. g.	أَلْسُنٌ	from	لِسَانٌ
14.	أَفْعَالٌ	e. g.	أَبْوَابٌ	from	بَابٌ

15.	أَفْعَلَةٌ	e. g.	أَنْدِيَّةٌ	from	نَادٍ
*16.	فَوَاعِلٌ	e. g.	بَوَاعِثُ	from	بَاعِثٌ
*17.	فَعَائِلٌ	e. g.	كَنَائِسُ	from	كَنَيْسَةٌ
18.	فُعْلَانٌ	e. g.	جَيْرَانٌ	from	جَارٌ
19.	فُعْلَانٌ	e. g.	شُجْعَانٌ	from	شُجَاعٌ
*20.	فُعْلَاءٌ	e. g.	سُفْرَاءٌ	from	سَفِيرٌ
*21.	أَفْعِلَاءٌ	e. g.	أَقْرِبَاءٌ	from	قَرِيبٌ
*22.	فَعَلَى	e. g.	مَرَضَى	from	مَرِيضٌ
*23.	فَعَالٍ	e. g.	دَعَاوٍ	from	دَعْوَى
*24.	فَعَالَى	e. g.	صَحَارَى	from	صَحْرَاءٌ
25.	فَعِيلٌ	e. g.	عَبِيدٌ	from	عَبْدٌ
26.	فُعُولَةٌ	e. g.	عُمُومَةٌ	from	عَمٌ
27.	فِعَالَةٌ	e. g.	حِجَارَةٌ	from	حَجَرٌ
28.	فَعْلٌ	e. g.	خَدَمٌ	from	خَادِمٌ
29.	فَعْلٌ	e. g.	صَحْبٌ	from	صَاحِبٌ

The following are the broken plurals of nouns or adjectives with more than three radicals:

*1.	فَعَالِلٌ	e. g.	كَوَاكِبٌ	from	كَوْكَبٌ
*2.	فَعَالِيلٌ	e. g.	عَصَافِيرُ	from	عُصْفُورٌ
3.	فَعَالِلَةٌ	e. g.	فَلَاسِفَةٌ	from	فَيْلَسُوفٌ

Note : forms marked with an asterisk are diptotes.

APPENDIX C

Diptotes (الْمَمْنُوعَاتُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ)

The following are the most important classes of words that are diptotes :

(a) Nouns or adjectives, singular or plural, masculine or feminine, ending in ء or ي , e.g.

عَذْرَاءُ , "virgin" (sing.)	خَضْرَاءُ , "green" f.
قَتَلَى , "killed" (pl.) (persons)	سَكْرَى , "drunk" f. s.
سَكَارَى , "drunk" m. & f. (pl.)	أُخْرَى , "other, another" f.
ذِكْرَى , "remembrance"	أَصْدِقَاءُ , "friends"

(Note : as nouns ending in ي are indeclinable, their classification as diptotes is academic).

This rule does not apply to cases in which the hamza or ي are radical, or are converted from the weak letters و or ي , e.g.

شَرَاءُ , "buying", from شَرَى	قُرَاءُ , "readers", from قَرَأَ
سَمَاءُ , "heaven", from سَمَا	مَعْنَى , "meaning", from عَنَى

But, أَشْيَاءُ , "things", the plural of شَيْءٌ , is a diptote in the Qur'an.

(b) Adjectives of colours and defects and the comparative of adjectives, e.g.

أَخْضَرُ, "green" m.	أَحْمَرُ, "red" m.
أَكْبَرُ, "bigger" m.	أَزْرَقُ, "blue" m.
آخَرُ, "other, another" m.	

(c) Adjectives ending in اِن the feminine form of which ends in ى (alif maqsura), e.g.

سَكْرَانُ (f. كَسَلَى), "drunk"; كَسْلَانُ (f. كَسَلَى), "lazy"

but

نَدَمَانُ (f. عَرِيَانَةُ), "regretful, sorry"; عَرِيَانُ (f. عَرِيَانَةُ), "naked" m.
نَدَمَانَةُ (f. نَدَمَانَةُ), "regretful, sorry" m.

(d) Some broken plurals, as shown in the table in Appendix B.

(e) Many proper names, e.g. مِصْرُ, "Egypt"; بَيْرُوتُ, "Beirut"; عَمْرُ, "Omar"; and especially:

(i) foreign, e.g.

بَارِيسُ, "Paris";	غَلَادِيسْتُونُ, "Gladstone";
حَمَلَايَا, "Himalaya";	لَنْدُنُ, "London";

(ii) those that resemble verbal forms, e.g.

أَحْمَدُ, "Ahmad"; يَزِيدُ, "Yazid";

(iii) those that are necessarily feminine by form or meaning,
e. g.

مَرْيَمُ , "Mary"; لَيْلَى , "Leila";
عَائِشَةُ , "Aisha" فَاطِمَةُ , "Fatima"

(iv) those that end in اُنْ , e.g.

حَمْدَانُ ; عُثْمَانُ ; بُلُودَانُ (; شِمْلَانُ)

(v) those that end in ة , e.g.

مُعَاوِيَةُ ; وَرْدَةُ ; مَكَّةُ .

APPENDIX D

Hamza

Hamzat-al-Wasl

In the following cases the hamza is hamzat-al-wasl :

- (a) in the definite article ;
- (b) in the imperative of sound First Form verbs;
- (c) in the perfect, imperative and verbal nouns of Seventh, Eighth, Ninth and Tenth Form verbs;
- (d) In the following words :

ابْنٌ , son

ابْنَةٌ , daughter

اِثْنَانِ , two (m.)

اِثْنَتَانِ , (f.)

اِمْرُؤٌ , man

اِمْرَأَةٌ , woman

اِسْمٌ , name

اِسْتُ , buttock

2. Where the letter preceding the wasla has no vowel it is normally given a kasra. The commonest exception to this is the preposition مِنْ , which takes a fatha whenever it is followed by the definite article, e.g. مِنَ الْبَيْتِ . Where مِنْ is followed by a word beginning with hamzat-al-wasl other than that of the definite article it elides with a kasra, e.g.

From the neighbour's son

مِنْ ابْنِ الْجَارِ

Where the preceding syllable is a diphthong, **و** is given a dhamma and **ي** a kasra, e.g.

The chosen ones of God

مُصْطَفَوُ اللَّهِ

The director's two sons

إِبْنَا الْمَدِيرِ

A common exception to this rule is **أُو** which elides with kasra, e.g. **الْوَلَدُ أَوِ الْبِنْتُ**. Damma is commonly used to provide the elision with hamzat-al-wasl with suffixed personal pronouns and verb endings in **م** (Chapter V).

Hamzat-al-Qat'

3. Apart from a few abnormalities hamza regularly undergoes a phonetic change in one case only: when a short vowel occurs between two hamzas of which the second has sukun, the second hamza is converted into the appropriate long vowel, e.g.

أَلَمْ has plural **آلَامُ**; the verbal noun of the Fourth Form of **أَجَرَ** is **إِيجَارُ**; "I believe" (IV **آمَنَ**) is **أُؤْمِنُ**. This rule means that in Form VIII two patterns will be found, e.g. **إِيْتَمَنَ** and **إِئْتَمَنَ** "to be entrusted". The pattern **إِيْتَمَنَ** can only be found as the very first word in a sentence.

Rules for determining the "seat" of hamza.

4. A. At the beginning of a word the seat of hamza is always alif, and if it is followed by long **ا**, or unvowelled hamza after **(ـ)**, **آ** is written, e.g.

آملُ ; أمراءُ ; إسلامٌ ; أمرٌ

B. At the end of a word it is written on the seat appropriate to the preceding vowel, e.g. أ after (ـَ) , و after (ـُ) , and ي after (ـِ) (without dots) after (ـِ) (but see C (c) below). If there is no vowel, there is no seat. A long vowel is regarded as an unvowelled consonant for this purpose, e.g.

لِقَاءُ ; جُزْءًا ; نُشُوءٌ ; بَدْءٌ ; تَنْبُوءٌ ; قُرْىَاءٌ ; نَشَأٌ .

When a word ends in tanwin of fatha, the hamza is properly written upon the stroke joining the preceding consonant with the alif, e.g. عِبْنَا ; شَيْنَا . Words ending in --āa'n (آء) (with tanwin of fatha) do not have the alif that normally follows that tanwin, e.g. نَدَاءٌ ; مَاءٌ (Introduction, paragraph 2 (a)).

C. In the middle of the word the hamza is written on the seat appropriate to the preceding vowel, or to the vowel it carries itself. If there is both a preceding vowel and a vowel on the hamza the seat is determined by the stronger vowel, (ـَ) being stronger than (ـُ) , and (ـُ) being stronger than (ـِ) , e.g.

مَسْأَلَةٌ ; مُوسِفٌ ; رَأْسٌ ; قَائِمٌ ; رُوُوسٌ ; رَيْسٌ ; سُيْلٌ .

There are exceptions to this rule :

- (a) where the hamza is preceded by a و or an ا and bears a fatha (i.e. وَاء , اء , or وَاء) there is normally no seat, e.g.

تَوَعَّمُ ; سَأَلَ (but also مَوْبُوءَةٌ ; مَقْرُوءَةٌ ("plagued"); وَزَرَائِهِمْ ; تَوَّامٌ , "a twin").

(b) the imperfect, etc., of verbs such as قَرَأَ , with hamza as last radical, may be written تَقْرَأُونَ ; تَقْرَأِينَ or تَقْرَأَيْنَ ; تَقْرَأُونَ .

(c) when the hamza occurs between two long alifs it is written without a seat, e.g. إِجْرَاءَاتُ ; قِرَاءَاتُ .

D. In most cases a prefix attached to a word does not alter its spelling, e.g. فِإِنَّ , لِأَنَّ , but note لَيْلًا . A suffix has the effect of removing a final hamza to the middle of the word and so brings into effect the rules in C, e.g.

مَائِهِمْ but مَائِهِ ; بَدُوهُ but بَدُوهُ ; أَمْرَاؤُهُ but أَمْرَاؤُهُ .

This does not always apply when the hamza is that of a word ending in أ , e.g. يَقْرَأُهُ , يَقْرَأُ ; مَبْدَاهُ or مَبْدَاهُ ; مَبْدَاهُ or يَقْرَأُهُ , يَقْرَأُ .

5. The above rules will cover the vast majority of patterns involving hamza, but variations can often be found in the writings of reputable authors even in common words, e.g.

يَقْرَأُونَ or يَقْرَأُونَ for يَقْرَأُونَ ; رُؤُوسٌ for رُؤُوسٌ ;

مَوَانِي for مَوَانِي .

and the increasing use of the typewriter and linotype machine is leading to the frequent appearance of such short cuts as شُونٌ for شُونٌ .

APPENDIX E

Rules for Changes in Hollow Verbs

There are three main rules for the contraction or modification of hollow verbs :

- (a) a weak letter preceded and followed by a short vowel becomes a long vowel, e.g. قَوْلَ becomes قَالَ . If the weak letter is preceded by (ـَ) , the change is to | and, if not, the change is to ي , e.g.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{خَافَ} &= \text{خَوَّفَ} ; \text{بَاعَ} = \text{بَايَعَ} \text{ but } \text{بَاعَ} = \text{بَايَعَ} \\ \text{but } \text{خَوَّفَ} &= \text{خَفِيَ} . \end{aligned}$$

- (b) if the weak letter is preceded by a vowelless consonant and carries a short vowel, the weak letter falls out and the vowel becomes long, e.g. يَخَافُ = يَخَافُ .

- (c) a long vowel followed by a vowelless consonant becomes short, e.g. يَكُونُ = يَكُنْ .

2. In those persons of the conjugation of the perfect active of Form I in which the first radical is not followed by a long alif the vowel changes to (ـُ) if the middle radical is و and the imperfect is of the pattern يَفْعُلْ ; otherwise it changes to (ـِ) , e.g. كُنْتُ .
(يَخَافُ / خَافَ) but (يَكُونُ / كَانَ) .

3. The **و** of the passive participle of Form I (**مَفْعُولٌ**) is dropped, together with the vowel of the weak radical. The first radical receives the characteristic vowel, i.e. (**ُ**) from **و** and (**َ**) from **ي**, e.g. **مَخُوفٌ** and **مَبِيعٌ**.

INDEX

A

- Absolute Object 68. المفعول المطلق
- Accusative Case, the 2, 11, 17, 25, 38, 44, 48, 53, 73, 87, 91, 101-2, 106, 141, 145, 150 حالة النصب
- Adjectives 4, 15 ff, 91, 101, 103, 106, 107, 148, 157. النعت
- Adverbs 53 ff., 68, 101 ff. الظرف
- “Alif maqsūra” 3, 24, 44. ألف مقصورة
- “All” 38 ff. كل
- Alphabet XIII ff. الأبجدية
- Attraction 107. النعت السببي
- Auxiliary Verbs 223 ff. الأفعال المساعدة

B

- “Both” 40. كلتا ، كلا

C

- Collectives 15 ff. اسم الجمع
- Colour, adjective of 48, 111. الصفات الدالة على اللون
- Comparative, the 45 ff., 106. أفعال التفضيل
- Compound Adjectives 106. الصفات المركبة
- Compound Nouns 12. الأسماء المركبة

Concord of Verb and Subject 8 ff.	مطابقة الفعل للفاعل
Conditional Sentences 134 ff.	الجملة الشرطية
Conjunctions 9, 87.	حروف العطف
Construct State 11, 40, 44, 106.	الاضافة
D	
Defects, Adjectives of 48, 111.	الصفات الدالة على العيب
Definite Article, the 1, 47.	ال التعريف
Demonstratives 11, 26 ff.	أسماء الاشارة
Diminutives 19.	التصغير
Diphthongs XVIII.	اندغام حروف العلة
Diptotes 44 ff. Appendix C.	الممنوعات من الصرف
Dual, the 2, 8.	المثنى
E	
Emphatic, the 79.	التوكيد
Exceptive Sentences 141 ff.	المستثنى
Exclamations 239 ff.	التعجب
F	
Feminine 2, 46, Appendix A.	المؤنث
Future, the 57, 91.	المستقبل
G	
Gender 2, 46, Appendix A.	الجنس

INDEX

A

- Absolute Object 68. المفعول المطلق
- Accusative Case, the 2, 11, 17, 25, 38, 44, 48, 53, 73, 87, 91, 101-2, 106, 141, 145, 150 حالة النصب
- Adjectives 4, 15 ff, 91, 101, 103, 106, 107, 148, 157. النعت
- Adverbs 53 ff., 68, 101ff. الظرف
- “Alif maqsūra” 3, 24, 44. ألف مقصورة
- “All” 38 ff. كل
- Alphabet XIII ff. الأبجدية
- Attraction 107. النعت السببي
- Auxiliary Verbs 223 ff. الأفعال المساعدة

B

- “Both” 40. كلتا ، كلا

C

- Collectives 15 ff. اسم الجمع
- Colour, adjective of 48, 111. الصفات الدالة على اللون
- Comparative, the 45 ff., 106. أفعال التفضيل
- Compound Adjectives 106. الصفات المركبة
- Compound Nouns 12. الأسماء المركبة

Concord of Verb and Subject 8 ff.	مطابقة الفعل للفاعل
Conditional Sentences 134 ff.	الجملة الشرطية
Conjunctions 9, 87.	حروف العطف
Construct State 11, 40, 44, 106.	الإضافة
D	
Defects, Adjectives of 48, 111.	الصفات الدالة على العيب
Definite Article, the 1, 47.	ال التعريف
Demonstratives 11, 26 ff.	أسماء الإشارة
Diminutives 19.	التصغير
Diphthongs XVIII.	اندغام حروف العلة
Diptotes 44 ff. Appendix C.	الممنوعات من الصرف
Dual, the 2, 8.	المتنى
E	
Emphatic, the 79.	التوكيد
Exceptive Sentences 141 ff.	المستثنى
Exclamations 239 ff.	التعجب
F	
Feminine 2, 46, Appendix A.	المؤنث
Future, the 57, 91.	المستقبل
G	
Gender 2, 46, Appendix A.	الجنس

Genitive Case, the 2, 11, 21, 38, 44, 47, 141, 145, 147, 149, 150, 151. حالة الجرّ

H

“To have” 75.

Hamza, Appendix D.

الهمزة

al wasl 1, 7, 82, 111.

همزة الوصل

al qat' 111.

همزة القطع

Hāl 53, 101 ff.

الحال

I

Imperative, Conjugation of the 78-9.

تصريف فعل الأمر

Imperfect 56, 63.

المضارع

Improper Annexation 106.

الاضافة غير الحقيقية

Indicative, Conjugation of the 78.

المضارع المرفوع

Infinitive, the 81.

المصدر

“Inna” and its sisters 87 ff.

إنّ وأخواتها

Interrogative, the 35 ff.

الاستفهام

J

Jussive, Conjugation of 78.

المضارع المجزوم

Jussive, use of 81 ff. 112, 134 ff.

K

“Kāna” كان , perfect and imperfect of 72.

passive and imperative of 83.

“Kāna” and its sisters 228 ff.

كان وأخواتها

L

“Lā” of the Categorical Negation
91 ff.

لا النافية للجنس

“Lack” 68.

عدم وعديم

M

Masculine 2.

المذكر

“Madda” XVII.

المدة

N

Number 2 ff.

العدد

Numerals 145 ff.

الأعداد

Cardinal 145 ff.

الأعداد الأصلية

Ordinal 153 ff.

الأعداد الترتيبية

Fractions 155 ff.

الكسور

Nouns of

Time, Place and Instrument 18, 112, 194.

أسماء الزمان والمكان والآلة

Nouns 31 ff. (أب، أخ، فم، حم، ذو)

الأسماء الخمسة

Nominative Case, the 2,3,44, 53, 73, 87, 92.

حالة الرفع

Nominal Sentences 9, 107.

الجملة الاسمية

Negative of the Perfect 7, 35, 81.

نفي الماضي

Negative of the Imperfect 35, 57, 82.

نفي المضارع

O

“Other than” 69.

غير

Orthographic Signs XVI ff.

علامات ضبط التهجئة

P

Particles 35 ff. 54.

Participles 62 ff. 69, 101, 103, 112, 194, 204 ff., passim

الادوات

Active 62 et passim

اسم الفاعل

Passive 4, 63, 112 et passim

اسم المفعول

Passive, the 61 ff.

المجهول

Impersonal use of 63.

Perfect Tense, the 6, 89, 91.

الماضي

Plural, the 2, 8, 47.

الجمع

Broken 3, 16, 47, Appendix B.

الجمع المكسر

Sound masculine and feminine 3 ff. 112.

الجمع السالم

Prepositional Phrases 88.

شبه الجملة

Prohibitions 81.

النواهي

Pronouns 69.

الضمائر

Personal 21 ff.

Possessive 21, 31.

Demonstrative 26 ff.

Interrogative 37.

Pronominal Suffixes 11, 21, 25, 87, 97.

الضمير المتصل

Q

“Qad” قد , use of 57, 102.

“Qādī” 16 ff. 205.

R

Radicals, the 6, 56.

Relative Adjectives 17.

Relative Sentences 96 ff.

Relative Pronouns 96 ff.

S

Sequence of Tenses 90.

Singular, the 2, 8.

“Shadda” XVII, 1, 18.

“Some” 38 ff.

“Sukūn” XVI, 82.

Subjunctive, Conjugation of the 78.

use of 80 ff. 112.

Superlative, the 45ff. 98, 106.

T

“Ta marbūta” XVI.

“Tamyīz” 53, 101-3, 106.

“Tanwīn” XVII, 1, 44

Tenses, the 6.

Compound 58.

Transliteration XVIII.

(النواقص) قاضٍ

حروف الفعل المجرد

النسبة

صلة الموصول

اسم الموصول

تناسق الصيغ

المفرد

الشدة

بعض

السكون

المضارع المنصوب

أفعال التفضيل

التاء المربوطة

التمييز

التنوين

الصيغ

Verb, General 6.	الفعل
Verb, Assimilated 180 ff.	المثال
Auxiliary 223 ff.	
Verb, Defective 200 ff.	الناقص
Verb, Derived forms 110 ff., et passim.	مزيادات الفعل الثلاثي
Verb, Doubled 162 ff.	المضاعف
Verb, Doubly weak 210 ff.	اللفيف المقرون
Verb, Hamzated 168 ff.	المهموز
Verb, Hollow 72 ff. 188 ff., Appendix E.	الأجوف
Imperfect 56 ff. 63.	
Verb, Passive 61 ff. et passim; 235.	المجهول
Perfect 6, 89, 91.	
Verb, Quadriliteral 223 ff.	الرباعي
Verb of Surprise 239 ff.	التعجب
Verb, Weak, see Verb Assimilated, Defective, Hollow	
Verb of Wishing 240 ff.	التمني
Verbal Noun 4, 49, 67, 81, 89, 111, 197.	المصدر
Verbal Sentences 7, 107.	الجملة الفعلية

Vocative, the 37 ff.

المنادى

Vowels 2, 6.

الحركات (أحرف العلة)

W

Wāw of the Hāl 102.

واو الحال